MY SEWING DICTIONARY

By Donna & David Trumble
CONTENTS

DISCLAIMER

PREFACE

INTRODUCTION

WELCOME

HOW TO USE THIS EBOOK

TERMS & DEFINITIONS
DISCLAIMER

All Rights Reserved.

The contents of this publication reflect only the author’s views and those of the contributing writers. The editors, research team, and contributors share their experience and knowledge without any improper motivations or intent. Every effort is made to ensure that the information presented in this publication is accurate and helpful. No representations or warranties of any kind are made with regard to the completeness or accuracy of the contents of this publication.

None of our contributing team are engaged in rendering any legal professional service. Please contact a professional person if legal advice or assistance is required. The publisher and editors disclaim any personal loss or liability caused or alleged to be caused, directly or indirectly, by the utilization of any information presented herein.

All product names, trademarks, or logos used herein are copyrights and trademarks of their respective owners.

“My Sewing Dictionary” is copyright 2006 by Sewing Answers. Com.

All Rights Reserved.
By
Sewing Answers. Com.
502 San Gabriel Blvd.
Georgetown, Texas 78628
U.S.A.
Web: http://www.sewinganswers.com
Email: contact@sewinganswers.com
MY SEWING DICTIONARY is a one of a kind reference tool for those who sew and quilt. It provides definitions to over three thousand sewing terms. The aim is to provide simple straightforward practical explanations and definitions that you will find easy to use and understand. You will find the definitions free of elaborate dictionary jargon, grammar classifications, and etymologies for the sake of simplicity.

MY SEWING DICTIONARY is the result of years of many sewing experience plus hundreds of hours of research and study. It is published and copy written by David and Donna Trumble of Sewing Answers.Com. All rights are reserved according to the copy write laws of the United States.

MY SEWING DICTIONARY is a work in progress. As new sewing terms arise, we will research them and add them to the dictionary. Revisions will be made as needed including appropriate enhancements and expansions.

Sewing Answers.Com is committed to answering your questions and providing definitions. You may submit your questions by sending an email to Contact @sewinganswers.com.
Dear Reader,

Our hope is that you will enjoy sewing more and sew with much greater confidence by having the Illustrated Sewing Dictionary and its thousands of definitions at your finger tips.

The Sewing Answers.Com team includes professional sewing machine technicians, sewing educators, and professional sewing business owners and managers.


The Sewing Answers. Com team brings over 10,000 hours of sewing education, workshops, and trainings. Our team includes graduates of Baby Lock Tech, Bernina University, Necchi Sewing Machine School, V.D.T.A., Milligan College, Towson University, Indiana University, and numerous other state universities.

Your editors for “My Sewing Dictionary” are David and Donna Trumble.

Donna Trumble fell in love with sewing as a nine year old girl and has been fascinated by sewing, home décor, heirloom sewing, custom sewing, costume design, alterations, and quilting ever since. She has been
a professional seamstress since 1968, when she conducted her own alterations business to pay her way through college.

While teaching in public schools, she was constantly amazing her fellow teachers and friends with her sewing skills. As mother of five children, Donna provided steady flow of quality clothes, suits, dresses, window dressings, and more.

Donna has original designs that have appeared across the country in Revolutionary War reenactments, wrestling rings, and formal events. Over the past fifteen years, Donna has managed an alterations shop, a drapery and window covering workroom, custom sewing center, and opened her own sewing and quilting stores. Today, Donna is responsible for the sewing education of three sewing centers in central Texas.

Donna and her husband, David have been married for thirty seven years. They have five grown children, four sons and a daughter. They have seven grandchildren. They have a very active church life with David preaching and teaching every Sunday.

David Trumble is a minister, author, sewing machine technician, and educator. David earned his doctor’s degree in 1985, and has worked as a Minister Of The Gospel for over thirty years. He has vast experience with sewing including work with Donna in several sewing businesses (alterations shop, a drapery and window covering workroom, and custom sewing center). David has completed advanced technical training as a sewing machine technician and has worked in the repair shop for over eight years. He also has numerous articles and books published in multiple areas of interest. David and Donna are primary shareholders in Temple Sewing and Supply, Inc. of Temple, Texas a chain of sewing and quilting stores in central Texas.
WELCOME

The wonderful world of sewing welcomes you.

The air is filled with excitement. Thrills and fun are just waiting for you. **Sewing offers you limitless opportunities** for expressing yourself, giving you pride, and achieving untold creative possibilities. You may sew for practical purposes, and know you have saved money, created something truly special, achieved your goals. Or you may sew as an art form to express yourself, to make beautiful things, or to create a treasured heirloom. In either case, you will always find sewing rewarding, uplifting, and satisfying.

The keys to success in sewing are **First, Knowledge. Second, the right equipment and tools.** At Sewing Answers. Com you will find both keys to success to ensure your success in each and every project. The answers, instruction, guidance, and support are here to meet your needs. Our online store offers all the tools, equipment, and supplies you need. Confidence comes with experience. The whole world of sewing awaits you. So, relax, enjoy, and take pride in your creative possibilities.

What are your possibilities? **There are virtually no limits.** Yes, you can alter and repair your ready made clothing. Custom made clothing and other items now come in the size, color and fabric YOU want and choose. Yes, you can make clothing, draperies, home decorations, wall hangings, table runners, heirloom treasures, beautiful gifts, quilts, crafts, and so much more. You can make exciting personal items like lingerie, robes, and sleepwear. You can make all kinds of practical things.
Or, you can create beautiful artwork. You can sew all kinds of decorative accessories like purses, vests, and throws. You can take your ordinary ready made clothes and embellish them with embroidery, appliqué, sequins, cording, and decorative stitching to turn the ordinary into fabulous one of a kind wearable art or elegant masterpieces.

The possibilities are endless, but you may want to try them all. The sources of inspiration and new ideas are endless. You may create something totally off the top of your head, or you may be inspired to make some of the thousands of projects available in books, magazines, videos, and sewing discussion groups. **When you make something yourself, it is uniquely yours.**

Once you begin, the whole world opens up. Your new skills become a great reservoir of resources that you can use in a thousand different ways. Try dyeing your own fabrics, adding sequins, making a hat, decorating a sweatshirt. Mix your sewing, embroidery, crafting, and other skills together to express yourself. Whatever you can imagine, you can create.

The following downloadable sewing and quilting resources are now or soon will be available at [www.sewinganswers.com](http://www.sewinganswers.com):
Ebooks & Digital Products

Please check out all the additional resources, products, reviews, and digital products available through

www.sewinganswers.com

Also find hundreds of hard bound sewing and quilting books, sewing machines, sewing furniture, cabinets, scissors, cutters, mats, rulers, stencils, and more at www.sewinganswers.com
ILLUSTRATED SEWING DICTIONARY is first and foremost a dictionary. Use it as a dictionary to look up sewing, quilting, textile, and apparel terms to find brief, brief, and practical answers.

To Use:

- Use your up/down arrows or navigation scroll bar to scroll down the list of over three thousand sewing terms.

- Click on a letter below to take you to the section of the dictionary beginning with that letter.

- Click “To Top” to return to the alphabet content key.
# TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Click on a letter below to take you to the section of the dictionary beginning with that letter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

¼” Foot

- Quilters love using the quarter inch quilting foot, a presser foot that helps quilters maintain a consistent quarter inch seam. SCANT quarter inch foot is one that measures 1-2 threads less than a quarter inch.

1/4" Seam

- Quilters doing piecing prefer to use a 1/4" seam to attach their parts together. This is much easier to achieve when using a 1/4" presser foot designed for this very purpose.

Aba

- Aba is a square wrap or cloak with closed sides and no hood originating in North Africa.

Abdomen

- The abdomen is the tummy area above and below the waistline. When measuring to adjust patterns it is important to anticipate any complications. The waist measurement is often all that is needed, but depending on the fitting you are seeking you may also need to adjust for the abdomen.

Absorbency

- The characteristic of fabric to absorb moisture, odors, or sunlight is called the degree of absorbency. These characteristics affect many aspects of the fabric and its uses including such concerns as static build-up, degree of staining and its removal, water repelling capabilities, tendency to wrinkle, etc.
**Accent**
- Normal is normal, but with the touch of something special any project can become spectacular. Accents are any or all of those added little features beyond the basics such as embroidery, applique', addition of cording or colorful features. We also say that the right shoes or purse accent the whole dress.

**Accessories**
- Accessories are items that compliment clothing including such items as purse, shoes, kerchiefs, and belt.

**Accordian-Pleated**
- When a fabric is folded forming many pleats all in the same direction (usually space 1/2" to 1"), the fabric is said to be accordion pleated.

**Accordion Pleats**
- A pleat is a fold in the fabric. Accordion pleats are lots of folds (folded in the same direction usually spaced no more than 1/2" to 1" across) similar to the folds on the musical instrument by that name. You may find accordion pleats on skirts, doll clothes, crazy quilting, or any project where you want the fullness to look shaped.

**Acetate**
- Acetate is a man made fiber created by refining the cellulose of cotton or wood pulp with acid and processing it into threads and fabrics. Acetate is a filament fiber used as lining fabric in men's garments because it comes in attractive prints and pin strips. Acetate has several problems the sewer must anticipate. It tends to ravel, it does not breathe, it wrinkles, and it tends to retain perspiration stains.
**Acrylic**
- Acrylic is a synthetic fiber produced from polycrylonitrile. It is characterized by its softness, feel of wool, machine wash and dry capabilities, drapes easily with little wrinkle, and ability to retain color finishes. Blankets and socks are to popular places you will find acrylic.

**Acrylic Ruler**
- An acrylic ruler is a special transparent ruler used with a cutting mat and a rotary cutter. Not only does the ruler do a good job of measurement, it is highly useful cutting fabric and strips.

**Adhesive**
- Adhesive is a chemical compound similar to glue that is used to hold things together.

**Adhesive Spray**
- Adhesive spray is a spray compound that is used to hold things together.
**Admiralty Cloth**
- Admiralty cloth is a heavy wool coating used for military uniforms.

**Aerozip Polyester**
- Aerozip Polyester is a type of polyester tape or ribbon used manufactured and distributed by the Aerozip company.

**African Mudcloth**
- African mudcloth is a type of cloth and design originally derived from Mali, Africa where it continues to be hand died and processed.

**Aida Cloth**
- Aida cloth or aida canvas is a special fabric designed for use with needlework specifically cross-stitch. The weave is measured to allow counted stitches to form elaborate designs.

**Air-soluble Markers**
- Air-Soluble Markers are markers with special disappearing ink that evaporates in twenty four to forty eight hours after exposure to the air. These make great temporary markers, but do not work for long term use because the marks disappear in just about a day.

**Albert Cloth**
- Albert cloth is a double sided wool fabric with a different color on each side of the fabric. It is good for use in reversible jackets.

**Album Quilt**
- An album quilt is a quilt with each block different. Blocks may be appliqued, pieced, embroidered, or a combination design. Like the Siggy Quilt it is often made by a group and presented as a gift to commemorate the group contributions. Blocks are sometimes signed in ink or embroidered.

**Alencon Lace**
- Alencon lace is a needlepoint lace. Alencon Lace is a net lace popular as bridal lace apparel often with embroidered edges with flowers and designs made of very thin cord or threads
(often with small thread ends left dangling). Alencon Lace may have sequins or beads added to enhance the lace.

**Alex Anderson**
- Alex Anderson is the well known hostess of *Simply Quilts* show on HGTV and contributor to Bernina USA.

**A-line Gown**
- A-Line is a term referring to a dress style with an A-line skirt that flares outward

**A-line Skirt**
- A-line skirt also known as the fit and flare skirt is a skirt that is fitted at the waist and flares out slightly at the bottom to create the appearance of an “A”. (A-line or Tulip Shape)

**All-Cotton Threads**
- All-cotton threads are threads made of 100% natural twisted cotton fiber thread. Quilters prefer using high quality cotton threads on their quilts when quilting with cotton fabrics because the thread matches the fabrics being used. Cotton thread may be identified using the burn test wherein the fibers quickly burns leaving an ash residue. Cotton threads provide as soft finish, but lack a high degree of tensile strength.

**All-In-One Facing**
- Facings may be applied to each piece of a garment, or combined to overlap more than one piece of the garment. This combination facing is called all-in-one facing. A common place for combining facing finishes the edges of the neckline and armhole in one piece of facing material.

**Allowance**
- Allowance is an added measure of fabric to make space for seaming - Common Seam allowances include 1/4", 1/2", 5/8".

**All-Purpose Feet**
- All-purpose feet are standard zig zag presser feet for use on a given sewing machine. Each sewing machine line used different identifiers to designate the all purpose foot such as Bernina #1 foot, or Baby Lock J foot. It may be used for straight stitch, zig zag, basting stitch, decorative stitching, and a multitude of
other stitches. Specialty feet are distinguished from the all purpose feet in they that are designed for special purposes such as the buttonhole foot, button foot, blind hem foot, pearl and piping foot.

**All-Purpose Polyesters**
- All-purpose polyesters are threads made of polyester or combined with other fibers (cotton covered polyester) intended for general purpose sewing. Coats and Clark ® or more recently the Coats® brand dual or multi-purpose sewing thread is made with a spun polyester core wrapped with cotton to soften the abrasiveness of the polyester. Unfortunately, sewing machines often have difficulty managing the lint volume from this type of thread, requiring frequent machine cleaning and special adjustments of tensions and needle selection. Spun polyester would also be considered an all purpose polyester thread. Note, it lacks the strength of the superior long fiber polyester threads. It is recommended that you match the threads to be used with the fabrics and the special needs of the project at hand. Generally, the best threads are long fiber polyester or long fiber cotton threads.

**Aloha Shirt**
- Aloha Shirt is a casual short sleeved shirt with floral patterns, bright colors.

**Alpaca**
- Alpaca is the hair fiber or fabric made from the fabric derived from the Alpaca sheep.

**Alter**
- One size does not fit all. Patterns and ready to wear clothing do not anticipate your special features. Therefore in order for them to fit you properly, they must be changed, adjusted, or altered.

**Alterations**
- Alterations are the changes in patterns and ready to wear clothing to adjust them for proper fit. Alterations may adjust for larger or smaller measurements.
• Pieced quilt blocks that are combined with ordinary blocks are called alternate blocks.

Ambiance
• Ambiance is the feeling generated by having the right environment, equipment, tools, fabrics, and general setting to enjoy sewing and/or quilting. To create an atmosphere of ambiance in your sewing space, you need to have a well organized, comfortable work area free of stress, confusion, or distraction. Then you need comfortable sewing furniture, chair, cabinet, cutting surface that give you a relaxed pleasant setting in which to play with your fabrics and sewing projects. Next you need a quality sewing machine and serger with easy convenience features and dependable operation. Finally, you need the bits and pieces of rulers, scissors, rotary cutter, mats, various tools, supplies, notions and fabrics to make your projects flow with ease. When you have your own sewing ambiance, your sewing and quilting will be easier, more enjoyable, and more satisfying than ever before.

American Sewing Guild
• American Sewing Guild is an association of sewers across the country who participate in local guild groups and share their sewing passion and knowledge.

Amish Quilt
• An Amish Quilt is a quilt that follows the design of the Amish communities from eastern Pennsylvania and the Midwest. Usually these quilts are made with solid dark colors including black as a background and employing simple geometric designs with borders.

Analogous Colors
• Analogous colors are colors that are the same adjacent or similar such as pale yellow, yellow, and dark yellow; or orange is to red and orange is to yellow; reddish brown is to brown and to red. Thread displays are usually arranged at the retail store so that the colors are analogous to one another.

Anchors/Anchoring
• Anchors is a term describing the fastening or securing of garments, buttons, or fabrics with thread or other devices.
When you start a seam, a few back stitches are recommended to anchor the seam as well as a few back stitches at the end of the seam. There a variety of different techniques, situations, and applications in which anchoring is done in all fields of sewing.

**Angles**
- Angles are geometric design features describing the lay of the fabric along straight lines, and slanted lines measured in degrees ranging from 0 degrees to 360 degrees. The most common angles used in sewing are 30, 45, 60, 90, 120, 135 degree angles.

**Angora**
- The Angora goat produces a fur or hair that is used to produce yarn known as Angora Mohair or Angora. A similar fur is derived from the Angora rabbit, but it is usually labeled "Angora rabbit hair" to distinguish it.

**Angrakha**
- Angrakha is an Indian long robe.

**Anklet**
- Anklet is a Short Sock.

**Announcement**
- Announcement is another name for the printed wedding invitation through which the wedding couple or parents of the bride invite family and friends to the wedding.

**Antebellum**
- Antebellum is a term referring to a style of bodice that is shaped like a V with the point of the V striking a couple of inches below the natural waistline. It is like a Basque bodice.

**Antitarnish Fabric**
- Silver is famous for tarnishing (turning an ugly green) when exposed to the air and similar gases. To protect the silver from tarnishing in the air special cotton fabrics have been developed. These include such brands as Kenized®, Silvercloth, and Silvershield (R).

**Apex**
• The apex is the point. It is the peak of a pyramid or mountain or the top point of a triangle. In sewing the apex is the point of a dart, or the tip of the bust where the bustline measurement is taken.

**Apparel**
- Apparel is another word for clothing or garments.

**Applique'**
- Placing a design onto the surface of a finished garment or fabric is called applique'. There are several different techniques to attach the design including iron-on double fusible adhesives, satin stitch, and blanket stitch applications. Techniques include: applique with Decorative stitches; Frayed-edge; Bias Bars; Blanket Stitch; Madiera; Mola; Net; Reverse or Stitching from the back; satin stitch; and Shadow.

**Applique'd Block**
- An applique'd block is a quilt block with designs attached to the quilt in one of several applique' techniques.

**Apply**
- Apply means to do, to undertake, to achieve. When we stitch or glue, it is said we apply a technique.

**Apricot**
- Apricot is the color of orange.
Apron
- Apron is an over garment used to protect clothing.

Apron Dress
- Apron Dress is an overdress without sleeves designed to protect clothing against splashes, spills, and spotting.

AQL
- AQL is the abbreviation for Acceptance Quality Limit.

Aqua
- Aqua is the color green blue.

Aquamarine
- Aquamarine is the color pale green blue.

Arctic
- Arctic is a rubber overshoe.

Arctic Fleece
- Arctic Fleece is a brand name of polar fleece a soft polyester fabric used for outer garments and blankets.

Argent
- Argent is the color silver white.

Argyle
- Argyle is a type of knit sock.

Arm
- The arm of a sewing machine is the portion of the machine that reaches from the body to the needle bar. On most sewing machines the arm reaches from the right side to the needle on the left as you sit facing the machine.

Armband
- Armband is a around the upper arm sleeve.

Arm Girth
• Arm Girth is the measurement largest part of the upper arm.

**Armlet**
• Armlet is another name for an Armband.

**Armo Weft**
• Armo Weft is a type of innerfacing designed and manufactured by the Armo® company. It makes great iron on stabilizer for Tee-Shirt Quilts. It is a heavier duty inner facing that is woven with a heavy weft or fill thread count.

**Armor**
• Armor is metal protective suit worn by a knight.

**Armscye**
• Armholes are called armscye. Like the eye of a needle through which the thread flows, the arm goes through the arm hole.

**Armure**
• Armure is a fabric interlaced with chain links of armor worn during Middle Ages.

**Art Linen**
• Art Linen is a woven linen bleached or colored.

**Artista Design Software**
• Artista Design Software is a computerized development software capable of editing, digitizing, and manipulating stitch files. It is currently in its fifth version and is available from Bernina Sewing Machine Dealers in an Editor Plus and Design Plus versions.

**Ascot**
• Ascot is a wide scarf.

**Ashen**
• Ashen is the color of ash.

**Assembly Piecing**
• How do you do Assembly Piecing? Using the chaining technique pieces are sewing one after another continuously. Later the are
cut apart, pressed, and used. This technique is commonly used for piecing the Log Cabin Block and is referred to as Chaining, Chain Piecing, Strip Piecing, and Assembly Piecing.

**Assisi Work**
- Assisi Work is a cross-stitch technique variation in which the background is embroidered while the pattern remains plain in outline.

**Astrakhan**
- Astrakhan is a cloth made of wool.

**Astray Seams**
- Astray Seams are seams that are not straight. Often when watching the needle action of the sewing machine instead of guiding the fabric, the seam will go astray or crooked. The goal is for every seam is to keep it straight and true.

**Asymmetrical**
- Asymmetrical refers to an uneven closure or design line on a garment

**Attic Window**
- An Attic Window is a special type of quilt block designed to look like you are actually looking out of an old fashioned window. It is achieved by using a square of scenic print with two sides bordered (with a lighter and darker fabric to create a three dimensional appearance) mitered to frame the square on one side as window sill and vertical; followed by a light colored window pane border. Often the block includes multiple views of the scene with differing sized squares framed appropriately.

**Attire**
- Attire is a term meaning clothing.

**Aubergine**
- Aubergine is the color dark purple or "eggplant" color.

**Auburn**
- Auburn is the color brown.
Auto Digitizing
• Auto Digitizing is a computerized process in which a picture file .jpg, .bmp, etc. are converted to stitch files that may be sewn out as embroidery all at the touch of a computer mouse. Numerous software packages are available for commercial and home use including Bernina's Artista V.5.0, Baby Lock's Master Works, and Brother's PE Design.

Auto Punch Design
• Auto Punch Design is an old term for Embroidery Digitizing Design reflective of the manual punch systems used on punch card machines prior to the advent of the modern computer.

Automatic Tension
• Automatic Tension refers to the advanced tensioning system of some of the most modern sewing machines. Older sewing machines had manual tension systems that had to be adjusted every time thread sizes were changed and often when sewing on different fabrics. The more modern automatic tensions systems do a marvelous job sensing the size, texture, and flow of the thread through the tension system so that they automatically (computer controlled) advance just the right thread amounts and tensions for perfect stitching.

Avacado
• Avacado is the color yellow green.

Awl
• An awl is a pointed tool used to poke holes or start holes like holes in belting. It may also be used to push out corners when fabric is turned such as the points of collars.

Azure
• Azure is the color of the pale blue sky.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Baby hem
- This is a special type of hem where the fabric is turned twice and sewn in a very narrow seam. It is usually only about 1/8th inch wide and does not exceed 1/4 inch.

BABY LOCK
- Baby Lock® is a line of excellent sewing machines marketed in the United States through the Tacony Corporation a leader in the sewing industry.

Back Applique'
- Back Applique' also known as Reverse Applique' is a technique in which the finish fabric is laid down first, the design fabric is laid on top and the design trimmed out exposing the finish fabric beneath.

Back Drape
- A Back Drape is material fastened either at the waist or shoulder that drapes or falls to floor length. The drape may or may not be removable.

Backpiece
- Backpiece is a term referring to a hair piece or head piece that attaches to the back of the hair on the back of the head often adorned with bows or flowers.

Back Shoulder Measurement
- Back Shoulder Measurement is the measurement across the upper back from shoulder, across the base of the neck, to the
other shoulder.

**Back Whipstitch**
- In hand sewing appliqué' seams are started with a backward stitch anchored with a knot followed by continued whipstitching around the design. The whipstitch is simply running the needle looping the edge. The reverse anchoring stitch is known as the back whipstitch.

**Back Yoke**
- The Back Yoke is a fitted piece of the garment at the shoulder or at the top of a skirt.

**Background Fabric**
- Background fabric is the material upon which an appliqué' is sewn.

**Background Quilting**
- Background Quilting is quilting on a piece of fabric as a foundation or background and adding blocks, appliqué’, etc. to the fabric.

**Backing**
1. The fabric used for the back of quilt is known as backing. Usually the backing is made of large cuts of fabric or even a single large piece. The front side of the quilt is called the quilt top.
2. Backing (backing fabric) may be applied to the wrong side of fashion fabrics before seams are sewn to mount underling.

**Backstitch**
- When starting a seam, it is very important to backstitch a few stitches to anchor the seam before proceeding. This is a simple matter of pressing the reverse or "backstitch" button (lever or knob) on your sewing machine when you first start sewing. Sewing the first few stitches backward (reverse) and then sewing the seam regularly holds the line of stitches in place. At the end of the seam, the same process is repeated to secure the beginning and ending of the seam.
**Backstitching**
- Press the reverse button and sew. This is backstitching. Backstitching anchors the seam and prevents the seam from unraveling.

**Back-tack**
- The back-tack and backstitch are the same. A few quick reverse stitches anchor the seam before sewing normally.

**Bag Balm**
- Bag Balm is a hand cream used to protect your hands from dryness, cracks, and soreness. The Bag Balm originated on the dairy farm as a cream used to keep cows utters clean, moist, and free of sores.

**Bagging**
- Coats and jackets are often lined; this is called bagging the coat or jacket.

**Ball Gown**
- Ball Gown (Silhouette Gown) is a style of formal gown in which the bodice and waist are fitted and the skirt is full.

**Ballerina**
- Ballerina is a style of formal gown often adorned with Tulle with a full skirt hemmed at the ankle.

**Ballerina Neckline**
- A Ballerina Neckline is a low cut neckline usually with strapless or spaghetti stratched dresses.

**Ballerina Skirt**
- A Ballerina Skirt is a short skirt used for dancing.

**Ballet Veil**
- Ballet Veil is a veil or headpiece that is usually made of netting and flows from the head about five feet in length or to the knees. (Also called Ballet or Princess Length Veil)
Ball Gown
- A Ball Gown is a dress with a very full seamed skirt beginning at the waist and continuing to formal length. It may be made in a variety of styles.

Ballpoint Needle
- Ballpoint needles are standard sewing needles in sizes 8, 10, 12, 14, and 16 with needle points that are especially made to sew on knit fabrics by sliding their ballpoints through the fibers. Using universal or sharp needles on knit fabrics will produce poor stitching including skipped stitches because their sharp points grab the knit fibers instead of passing gently through them as the ballpoint needles do.

Ballpoint Pins
- Ballpoint pins are specially designed for use with knit fabrics, like ballpoint needles, the pins do not snag on the knit fabrics.

Ballroom Bustle
- Ballroom Bustle or Overbustle is a garment treatment frequently appearing on formal gowns especially wedding gowns where the fabric or train is fastened at the back of the gown on top of the skirt.

Baltimore Album Style
- Baltimore Album Style is a red and green appliqué design on white background made popular during the 19th century from Baltimore, Maryland. It is considered a classic appliqué design.

Bamboo Pointer and Creaser
- This is another name for a point turner which is used to turn collars, cuffs, and lapels. Its rounded end is used to crease the temporarily pressed seams open or fabric. The creaser is a pressing device used to crease pants and other items.

Bandeau or Tube Top
- A tube top is a band-shaped garment intended to cover the breasts.

Ban-roll® Waistband
• Belting (by this brand name) is used to make non rolling waistbands.

**Bar Code**
• Bar Code or UPC (Universal Product Code) is a label placed on items for sale representing price, serial number, and other product information represented by lines of ink in a set.

**Bar Tack**
• A set of zig zag stitches sewn very closely together forms a secure beginning or ending stitch called a "bartack". Many sewing machines include a specific stitch for this function, but this stitch can be achieved by simply selecting a zig zag stitch with very short stitch length. Those sewing machines using the four step button hole depend on the bartack at the top and bottom of the buttonhole to complete the buttonhole.

**Bargello**
• Bargello is a quilt piecing technique in which fabric is sewn in horizontal strips and then cut and arranged in vertical steps to produce a block design of off-set squares of color in waves or geometric patterns.

**Bark Cloth**
• Bark cloth is a strong cotton fabric commonly used for interlinings in jackets and upholstery application.

**Barre'**
• Barre' is a flaw in the fabric running along the grainline or crossgrain. The flaw is usually caused by tension variations during the knitting process or other complications during finishing.

**Barrel Cuff**
• Barrel Cuff is a wide shirt or jacket cuff shaped like a barrel without any opening or placket.

**Baseball Cap**
• Baseball Cap is a cap with a visor or bill to protect the eyes from the sun.
**Basic Block**
- Basic Block is the beginning block or the block around which the quilt is designed.

**Basketweave**
- Basketweave is a special weave of cloth achieved by using twice as many threads in the warp as in the weft. Examples include oxford cloth and monk cloth.

**Basque**
- Basque is like the Antebellum style bodice characterized by a V shape ending a couple of inches below the natural waistline providing a visually slimming effect around the waist and hips.

**Baste**
- Temporarily attach fabrics together in preparation for finish sewing.

**Bastemarking**
- Mark the fabrics to show where they should lie. This may be done with hand basting or machine basting.

**Bast Fiber**
- Bast Fiber is the fiber taken from the bark in certain plant stems to produce fibers such as flax, jute, or hemp.

**Basting**
- Basting is the practice of temporarily fastening two fabrics together to assist their positioning during final sewing of seams. Basting a quilt involves holding the layers of the quilt together temporarily before sewing. Basting may use adhesive, safety pins, or large basting stitches.

**Basting Ease**
- Basting ease is a technique of temporarily attaching fabrics of different sizes together prior to final sewing.

**Basting Needle**
• A basting needle is a special hand sewing needle used for basting fabrics together.

**Basting Spray**
• Basting spray is a fabric adhesive used to temporarily hold the quilt together during quilting or for setting applique'.

**Basting Stitch**
• Before sewing a seam, it is often helpful to fasten fabrics together to insure proper positioning during final sewing. This stitch may be done by hand or by machine and consists of an elongated straight stitch. The basting stitch intended only as a temporary stitch, and therefore is the longest stitch possible. Single basting stitches can be used or a series of basting stitches known as a running basting stitch can be used.

**Basting Tape**
• Two sided tape is often used to temporarily hold two fabrics together instead of sewing them with a basting stitch. This is especially useful for placing zippers and similar applications. Wash-away- basting tape is also quite useful for this purpose.

**Bateau Neckline**
• The Bateau Neckline also known as a boat neckline is a neckline style featuring a straight across (front and back same depth) high and wide neckline joined at the shoulders.

**Batik**
• Batik is a type of fabric produced through a process of applying dye resists (like wax) to resist dying. When the fabric is dyed repeatedly, it produces very unusual color combinations.

**Batiste**
• Batiste is a plain weave, medium weight, natural fiber (usually cotton) fabric. This is useful lining fabric and heirloom sewing.

**Battenburg**
• Battenburg is a heavy cottony (handstitched look) lace originally from Battenburg Germany often used for collars on cotton garments. Battenburg Lace is characterized by beautiful white or ivory loops, floral, ovals, and geometric designs made of fine
linen threads. Battenburg Lace is commonly found in doilies, linens, tablecloths, wedding apparel, and towels.

**Battens**
- Battens are a wooden part of a loom used to hold, position, or clamp the reed fibers. Battens are also a wooden tool used to beat filling yarn into place on the loom. Rolls or sheets of cotton or other fibers are often referred to as Battens.

**Batting**
- The filler material used between the top and back of the quilt. This filler provides thickness and warmth to the quilt.

**Batwing Sleeve**
- Batwing Sleeve is a sleeve designed to reflect a bat's wing, long with deep armhole approaching the waist.

**Beachwear**
- Beachwear is swim suit clothing.

**Bead**
- Bead is a round pearl with a hole running through it for sewing onto fabric or other projects.

**Beading**
- Beading is the application of beads to a project.

**Beading Needle**
- A long sharp hand needle with a round eye that is used to sew on beads and sequins is called a Beading Needle. Special needs require special tools. Beading needles are used to sew beads and sequins on to fine fabrics. They are very fine needles so they can thread through the beads or sequins and very long to make them easier to use.

**Beanie**
- Beanie is a skullcap often worn by college freshmen.

**Beanie Baby**
- A popular soft plush animal doll filled with polyester beads is sold under the trade mark Beanie Baby and collected by many
Bearding
- Bearding describes the batting that sometimes shows through the facing or backing or edging of a quilt. This sometimes occurs when using synthetic battings, poor quality fabrics with low thread counts, and around the edges of a quilt prior to binding the edges. The solution for bearding is to use better fabrics with higher thread counts. Please note: you get what you pay for: Far too often cheap fabrics are look a likes and look goods, but are actually produced on poor grade gray goods. Poor gray goods will eventually reveal their poor quality with bearding, premature wear, or other flaws.

Bear Paw Design
- Bear Paw Design is a quilt design company that produces quilt patterns.

Bear Skin
- Bearskin is fabric for hats and other articles made from bear pelts.

Beater
- Beater is a mallet used to beat dust and dirt out of rugs.

Beaver
- Beaver is a fur made from beaver skins.

Beaver Cloth
- Beaver Cloth is fabric usually made of cotton or wool which is made to look and feel like beaver skins.

Bed
- The bed of the sewing machine is the bottom portion of the sewing machine where you sew.

Bed Linens
- Bed linens are more commonly known as sheets and pillow cases.
**Bedford Cord**
- Bedford Cord is a strong, durable, cotton fabric with raised ridges running along the grainline. It is often used for work clothes and upholstery.

**Beeswax**
- For hand sewing thread can be strengthened and knotting reduced by lightly spreading beeswax on the thread. The thread is simply drawn across the beeswax to produce the desired effect. This also works well for quilting and candlewicking.

**Beige**
- Beige is the color of gray yellow brown.

**Bell-bottom**
- Bell-bottom is a pants design in which the pants flare from the knees down.

**Bell Gown**
- A Bell gown is a dress that is narrow at the waist and full at the bottom forming the appearance of a bell.

**Bell Sleeve**
- Bell Sleeve is a sleeve shaped like a bell, narrow at the shoulder and flared at the wrist much like a church bell.

**Bellyband**
- Bellyband is a wide fabric belt also known as girth or band.

**Belt**
- Belt is an article worn around the waistline often made of leather, but many sewing machines also have a belt that extends from the motion to the drive shaft.

**Belt Carrier**
- Belt Carrier is a belt loop commonly seen on belted pants, slacks, etc. through which a belt passes to keep the belt in place while the belt helps keep the pants in place. Inside a
sewing machine, there are often guides to hold the sewing machine belt in line which are called belt carriers or guides.

**Belting**
- Waistbands are made of special stiff and heavy interfaced material called belting. A popular brand is BanRol®.
- The old round leather strips used to make belts for Treadle sewing machines were also called belting.

**Bemberg**
- Bemberg is a rayon lining that is soft, and silky. Bemberg is also the trademark of the Bemberg SPA, Italy.

**Bengaline**
- Bengaline (Also known as Faille) is a woven ribbed or corded fabric like gaberdine made from cotton, silk, polyester or rayon that has a durable warp-face used for ribbons and suits.

**Bent-handle Dressmaker's Shears**
- Bent-handle Dressmaker's Shears are scissors used to cut fabric in the construction of garments.

**Bent-handle Scissors**
- Bent-handle Scissors are also called Dressmaker's Shears.

**Beret**
- Beret is a wool cap without a visor.

**Berlin Work**
- Berlin Work is a course half cross-stitch technique that is quick and colorful.

**Bermuda**
- Bermuda is a bag with wooden handle and cloth covers: it also refers to a type of shorts (Bermudi)

**Bernina**
- Bernina ® is a line of sewing machines manufactured in
Switzerland and marketed world wide through a network of certified independent sewing machine dealers.

**Bertha**
- Bertha is a collar style (style often trimmed with lace around the neckline from nine inches to a foot and a half long) designed with wide round features over the shoulders.

**Besom Pockets**
- Besom Pockets are pockets inset in the garment accessed through the welted slit opening.

**Bethlehem Star**
- Bethlehem Star is a quilt design with a square block in the center and a border around the block. Then a right triangle aligns with each edge of the border so that eight triangles protrude (2 from each side) with their angled sides joined at the center of each side. The block is completed with four squares in the corners and four triangles pointed to the joining point along the square border.

**Betweenes Needles**
- Betweenes are hand quilting needles. Sizes vary. These needles are very short. Size 12 is smaller than size 9.

**Bias**
- Bias simply means diagonal of the fabric. True bias runs at a 45 degree angle across the crosswise and lengthwise grainlines. Pull along this bias and the fabric stretches to its maximum degree.

**Bias Bar**
- The bias bar is a pressing tool usually made of plastic. Fabric is wrapped around the bias bar along the fabric bias line and pressed. A technique for applique' called bias bar applique' uses a bias bar to create bias strips and attach them in creative design fashion using blind hem or pin stitching stitches.

**Bias Binding**
- Bias binding is a bias cut fabric cut into strips and used to wrap and finish the raw edges of a seam. It is also known as the Hong Kong finish.
Bias Bound
- When a seam is wrapped with a bias cut strip of fabric and stitched in place, it is said to bias bound. The bias fabric binds the seam finishing it off. This is common on quilts and other project where multiple layers are seamed together. The bias binding provides a strong and secure finish known as the Hong Kong finish.

Bias Cut
- Bias Cut is cutting the fabric diagonally for a garment to accommodate body contours closely.

Bias Designs
- Bias designs are designs that take advantage of the special stretch capacity of the bias of the fabric.

Bias Edges
- Bias edges are simply the edge of fabric folded or cut along the diagonal of the fabric (45 degrees).

Bias Facings
- Bias Facings are strips of bias cut fabric turned over and stitched in place for the purpose of facing a garment instead of using traditional facing fabric cut on the straight grainline of the fabric. Traditional facings are shaped and cut to fit to line fabrics in high stress areas such as collars, down the center front where buttons are used, shoulders and cuffs. The bias facing is easier to fit and sew and stays in place better than the traditional facing.

Bias Seam
- A Bias seam is a seam or line of stitches sewn diagonally across the grain and crossgrain of the fabric.

Bias Square
- When a fabric is folded on the diagonal, it is said to be on the bias. When half square triangles or bias squares are made, squares are folded in half along the bias producing the Bias Square.
Bias Tape
- Bias tape are strips of fabric cut on the bias. These are used for bindings and facings because of the flexible stretch.

Bias-bound Seam
- A bias-bound seam is a seam encased in bias binding.

Bicorne
- Bicorne is a tilted hat.

Bight
- The width of a zig zag stitch is commonly known as its bight.

Bike Tards
- Bike Tards is a one piece tight fitting garment that begins at the shoulders and falls to the hem of shorts, used by bicyclists.

Bikini
- Bikini is a skimpy two piece bathing suit top and/or bottom.

Bind a Quilt
- How do you bind a quilt? There are numerous methods for binding a quilt, but they all accomplish the same essential result. A quilt usually consists of a quilt top, a filler, and a backing. These are quilted or sewn together to form one stabilized blanket type item. Unfortunately, after all the quilting is finished the raw edges of the three layers are still exposed and vulnerable to all manner of wear. To bind a quilt means to cover and finish this edge all the way around the quilt. A popular way to do this is by cutting strips of fabric either on the straight of the goods or on the bias and splicing the strips together end to end. Finishing one side at a time. Fold a length of the binding strips in half, and lay the strip along the edge of the quilt right sides together. Straight stitch the binding to the quilt using a quarter inch seam allowance. Enclose the edge by folding the fabric wrong sides together so that the crease in the middle of the strip is centered on the edge of the quilt. Turn the quilt over and top stitch the other side of the binding in place. The corners may be folded and wrapped or mitered as desired.
**Binding**
- If the strips of fabric are cut on the straight of the fabric, they are called straight binding. If the strips are cut on the bias are called bias binding. Binding is edge covering which prevents raw edges from being seen as well as fraying. The most common binding consists of a piece of fabric folded good sides together with the top fabric and seamed together. The fabric is then wrapped around the raw edges and seamed again to finish the bound edge. Bias binding is often used especially with quilts to provide maximum flexibility and stretch. To finish the edges of a quilt or similar project long narrow strips of fabric are sewn enveloping the edge. This technique is called binding and the materials are also called binding.

**Birdsnesting**
- Birdsnesting is a thread problem in which thread bunches up under the fabric between the needle plate and fabric. It may be caused by too little upper thread tension, error in threading (upper thread missing the take up lever or otherwise improperly threaded), problem with incorrect presser foot on very tight stitch length, or flagging.

**Birdseye**
- Birdseye, sometimes called Diaper Cloth, is a woven fabric that is characteristically soft and lightweight.

**Biretta**
- Biretta is a Catholic clerical cap that has a square brim and three ridges forming the crown.

**Birthing**
- How do you do birthing on a quilt? Lay the quilt backing face down with batting on top. Lay the quilt top face down. Sew a quarter inch seam all the way around the quilt except for about 8”. Turn the quilt sandwich inside out. Finally, blind stitch it closed. Such quilts do not need to be bound.

**Biscuit**
- Biscuit is the color gray yellow brown.

**Bishop Sleeve**
• Bishop Sleeve is a type of full sleeve set into a normal armhole and gathered from shoulder to wrist often with a decorative ribbon or band.

**Bister**
• Bister is the color yellow brown.

**Black**
• Black is technically not a color but an absorption of all colors, but most people think of it as a color that is like the color of coal.

**Black Light Clear**
• Black Light Clear is a process that produces glow in the dark images on fabric. You can not see anything except when exposed to black light.

**Black Out Lining**
• Draperies often need to keep light out of a room. Blackout is the common name for a cotton polyester blend fabric used for drapery lining that blocks light out. It comes in white, cream, and black. Above all it is great for people who need to sleep during the day.

**Black Wool**
• Black Wool is a term describing wool that is not white. Black wool may actually be gray or brown.

**Black Work**
• Blue Work, Black Work, Green Work, and Red Work are all terms describing the technique of using a single color thread for outline embroidery.

**Blade**
• A blade is a cutting edge as in a rotary cutting wheel blade, razor blade, serger trimming blade.

**Blae**
• Blae is the color of blue gray.

**Blanket Cloth**
• Blanket Cloth is a warm cloth with a heavy nap on both sides often used for blankets.

Blanket Stitch
• A blanket stitch is a stitch often used for stitching applique' to the background. It can also be used for edging on blankets, buttonholes, vest edges, etc. The stitch begins a straight stitch, then juts in to the right the width of a zig zag stitch and back. After it it is sew it looks like a straight line with perpendicular arms reaching out on one side.

Blazer
• A blazer is a sport jacket without matching slacks, with lapels, may have patched pockets, group identifies on chest pocket, and long sleeves similar to a suit jacket, but slightly less formal.

Bleeding
• Bleeding is a term applied to fabric which is not color fast. The color washes away during laundry or moisture exposure. As the color seeps off one fabric it will often dye mark or discolor other adjacent fabrics.

Blemish
• Blemish is a term referring to jewelry or fabric that has a flaw (knicks, scratches, chips) on the outside of the piece especially the stone surface, but it is also a term that refers more generally to flaws on any kind including blemishes on the skin, blemishes on the surface or a table, etc.

Blend
• A blend is a fabric made of combined yards of different types such as cotton/poly blend. The threads of different types are twisted together and then woven together to form the blended fabric.

Blind
• Fabric supply houses will occasionally offer flat folds, bolt ends, or clearance fabrics for sale in bulk without detailed inventories.
The offering is said to be a blind offering because the purchaser does not actually know what he is getting.

Blind Hem
- A blind hem is a very popular way to finish hems on skirts, dresses, slacks, etc. The blind hem stitches appear on the underside or hidden side of the finished garment, while being essentially invisible on the finished side. The blind hem may be accomplished by hand sewing, machine sewing with a blind hem foot, or use of a special blind hem machine. To achieve this stitch is one of the favorite tricks of dressmakers. The fabric is fold back from the cut edge about half an inch. It is then folded back again. The sewing machine stitches along the straight of the fabric with periodic jump stitches on the finished fabric. Just a tiny single stitch holds the blind hem to finished side.

Blind Hem Foot
- The blind hem foot is a specialty presser foot used on the sewing machine to help create the blind hem.

Blind Hem on Knits
- Blind Hem on Knits is not as attractive as it is on woven fabrics. It is recommended if you sewing machine has the stretch blind hem stitch to proceed just as if the fabric were woven. Fold your fabric twice once with a quarter inch fold and a second one inch fold wrong sides together. Press the folds in place. Fold it back forming a small lip along the first fold. Sew the stretch blind hem stitch along the lip as the stitch zigs over to catch threads along the fold. You may also sew a blind hem on knit fabrics using your serger. Generally, however, it is best to use other hemming techniques to finish hems on knit fabrics that hold in place more effectively. (Try twin needle top stitching or a cover stitch if you have a cover stitch capable machine.)

Blind Hem Stitch
- The home sewing machine uses a combination of straight stitches and an offset zig zag stitch to form the blind hem stitch.

Blind Hemmer
- The blind hemmer is a specialty sewing machine used
exclusively to create the blind hem. Unlike the blind hem produced on a standard sewing machine, the blind hemmer uses a single thread looped repeatedly with periodic punctures of the facing fabric to form a blind hem stitch.

**Blindstitch**
- The Blindstitch and Blind Hem Stitch are the same. The term Blindstitch focuses a bit more on the formation of the stitch, while the term Blind Hem Stitch emphasizes the application or use.

**Block**
- Most quilts use squares of fabrics assembled in what is called a block. Typical blocks measure either six inches or twelve inches. It is also the basic design unit of quilting.

**Block Monogram**
- Block Monogram is a monogram or embroidered letters designed in a block design.

**Block To Block Set**
- Block to Block Set is a quilt with blocks arranged edge to edge without sashing.

**Blocking**
- How do you block a block? Blocking is the process of squaring up a quilt block. This is achieved by laying a block on a ironing surface with a grid laid out on it. Using the steam iron and pins, stretch the block until it is square. It may be necessary to use a square acrylic ruler to trim excess from the block.

**Blond**
- Blond is the color light yellow.

**Bloodred**
- Blood red is the color of blood.

**Bloomer**
- Bloomer is an under slacks garment (worn under a skirt) which is characterized by its puffy loose fit from the waist to the gathered pants hem at the ankles.
Blouse
- Blouse is another name for a woman's or girl's shirt.

Blouson
- Blouson is an article of clothing cinched around the waist and puffed or bloused above the waist.

Blowing
- Blowing is a process of blowing steam through fabric to remove curls from the yarns.

Blucher
- Blucher is a lace up shoe.

Blue
- Blue is the color blue.

Blue-White
- Blue-White is a term referring to diamonds that glow under ultra-violet light.

Blue Jeans
- Blue Jeans are pants made of blue denim.

Blue Work
- Blue Work, Black Work, Green Work, and Red Work are all terms describing the technique of using a single color thread for outline embroidery.

Bluffed Edge
- When a finished edge is produces which has not been topstitched, it is called a bluffed edge.

Bluish
- Bluish is the color with a little blue.

Blusher Veil
- Blusher Veil describes the portion of a veil used to cover the face as in a Shoulder Length veil that is about two feet long.
**Boa**
- Boa is a furry, feathery, fluffy scarf.

**Boater**
- Boater is a stiff straw hat.

**Boat neck**
- Boat neck is a neckline that sits on each shoulder with a very slight almost straight across neckline.

**Bobbin**
- Bobbin is a device to hold thread (wrapped around it). In a sewing machine, the bobbin is placed under the needleplate. Thread from the needleplate is looped by the needle to form a stitch. In the earliest sewing machines the bobbin was inserted into a shuttle, but in more modern machines the bobbin is placed in a bobbin carrier. The modern home sewing machine uses two threads to form a stitch. The upper thread is threaded from a spool mounted on top of the machine and threaded through the upper tension, the thread take up lever, numerous thread guides, and finally through the eye of the needle. The lower thread is wound on a small spool made either of plastic or metal and encased in a bobbin carrier or holder. The thread from this bobbin is threaded through a lower tension and up through the needle plate. As the sewing machine hook moves behind the needle it picks up the thread from the bobbin and wraps it with the upper thread running through the needle. This forms the stitch. The bobbin is that spool used to hold the lower thread.

**Bobbin Case**
- The bobbin case or bobbin carrier is a devise that holds the lower spool of thread known as a bobbin. There are several different types of bobbin cases depending on the type of sewing machine used. Two of the most popular bobbins are the class 15 and the class 66, however, use only the bobbin recommended for use in your sewing machine as indicated in your sewing machine manual or by your local sewing machine dealer.

**Bobbin Embroidery**
• Bobbin Embroidery is a form of Bobbin Work or a technique for using specialty threads in the bobbin and sewing right side down toward the needle plate. In Bobbin Embroidery, the fabric is hooped right side down to enable the specialty threads to appear on the surface of the finished piece. This technique is best used to create outlines and designs that are not overly dense.

**Bobbin Play**
• Bobbin Play employs a heavier thread in the bobbin without threading it through the bobbin tension (such as a pearl crown rayon or other decorative thread) and accommodated upper thread tension to sew on the wrong side of the fabric. When finished the heavier thread or decorative thread appears on the underside of the sewing. Turn the fabric over to see the face of the fabric and the decorative threads are embellished in place.

**Bobbin Stitching**
• Continuous thread sewing is achieved by threading the bobbin thread through the needle (with no upper thread) is called bobbin stitching.

**Bobbin Winder**
• Sewing machines have mechanical devices used to wind thread on to bobbins. While there are a variety of similar devices, they are called bobbin winders.

**Bobbin Winder Spindle**
• The bobbin shank upon which the bobbin is placed for winding thread on to the bobbin is called a bobbin winder spindle.

**Bobbin Winder Stop**
• Next to the bobbin and part of the bobbin winder mechanism is a devise that senses when the bobbin is full and stops the winding process. This is the bobbin winder stop or break.

**Bobbinet**
• Bobbinet is a mesh net made of cotton, silk, or nylon.

**Bobby Socks**
• Bobby Socks are girl's socks with tops that reach above the ankle.
Bodice
- The bodice is the pattern piece or garment section that covers from the shoulder to the waist. Bodice is the top part of a garment pattern front and back bodices.

Bodkin
- How do you pull elastic, cord, or ribbon through a casing? Use a bodkin, a device similar to tweezers that helps pull elastic through casing. A popular one is the Ezy-Pull® Bodkin.

Body
- The body of the sewing machine is the large portion of the machine that holds between the arm on the top and the bed or bottom of the machine. This is usually on the right side of the machine as you sit facing the machine. It is usually where the machine controls sit.

Body Measurements
- Before cutting out a garment pattern or attempting to sew any type of garment, it is essential to know the measurements of the anticipated wearer. These measurements are usually taken using a flexible sewing measuring tape (SAE or Metric) around the various parts of the body such as waist, inseam, shoulders, etc.

Body Shirt
- Body Shirt is a snug fitting blouse that with a tail that snaps or fastens under the crotch.

Body Stocking
- Body Stocking is a snug fitting stretchy one piece garment.

Bodyhose
- Bodyhose is a one piece whole body hosiery or tight fitting undergarment such as a spandex garment or Underarmor™ worn by athletes and paintball players.

Bodysuit
- Bodysuit is a snug one piece article of clothing.

Boiled Wool Fabrics
• Boiled Wool Fabrics are preshrunk heavy duty woolen coating fabrics (used for coats and jackets) whose weave becomes super tight as a result of the shrinking or boiling process.

**Boilersuit**
• Boilersuit is another name for coveralls.

**Bolero**
• Bolero is a short jacket.

**Bolero Jacket**
• A bolero jacket is a short jacket that is waist length, generally loose fitting, and left open at the front. It is often highly ornate.

**Bolivia**
• Bolivia is wool also known as Elysian wool.

**Bolo Tie**
• Bolo Tie is also known as string tie made of a string with an ornamental clasp.

**Bolt**
• Fabric is wrapped around a cardboard holder in varying yardages. Generally, when you purchase fabric from a retail store, you will purchase 10, 15, 20, or 25 yards of fabric called a bolt of fabric. While it is possible to purchase fabric in other forms such as flat folds (which are simply folded fabrics), or fat quarters (which is special cut of fabric designed to give quilters more square cuts of the fabric. Purchasing a bolt of fabric is a good idea if you need large quantity amounts, but usually stores will cut lesser amounts from the bolt.

**Bombazine**
• Bombazine is a fine English fabric made of silk or rayon and dyed black.

**Bomber**
• Bomber is a type of jacket.

**Bomber Jacket**
• Bomber Jacket is a zippered leather jacket with front pockets and knitted cuffs.

**Bonded Fabrics**
• Bonded Fabrics are fabrics that are produced using a combination of processing including liquification, chemical treatment, compression, glued, or heat set to form layers of compressed or bonded fabrics.

**Bonding**
• Bonding is the process of adhering layers of different or similar fabrics together to form a combined fabric. Bonding may include a variety of different manufacturing processes including liquification, chemical treatment, compression, glued, or heat set to form layers of compressed or bonded fabrics.

**Boned Bodice**
• A Boned Bodice is A Corset Top that has a strapless bodice with boning and form fitted. It has laces or snap closures styled like the traditional lady's corset.

**Boning**
• Boning is stiff plastic or metal strip used to provide shape and support for bodices or hoop skirts.

**Bonnet**
• Bonnet is a woolen cap. Bonnet is a brimless hat worn by small children.

**Boondoggle**
• Boondoggle is a Boy Scout version of the Bolo Tie using the bright yellow kerchief and the Boy Scout slide.

**Boot**
• Boot is a heavy shoe that slides on to the foot.

**Boot Cut**
• Boot-cut is a style of slacks in which the legs are flared from the knee to the ankle to accommodate boots.
**Bootee**
- Bootee is a baby's knitted shoe.

**Border Design**
- Border Design is fabric with a design along one or both selvages.

**Border or Border Strips**
- Borders are fabric strips around the outside edge of a quilt. It is common to sew borders which are flat bands of fabric framing the quilt. Borders and sashing are very similar. Borders tend to act more as a frames for the quilt rather than framing the quilt blocks themselves as with sashing.

**Border Print**
- Border Prints are fabrics printed with a special design printed parallel to the selvage for use as borders in quilts.

**Bosque Waist/V-Waist**
- This waistline treatment starts at the natural waistline and forms a "V" shaped center panel.

**Botany Wool**
- Botany wool is descriptive of fine quality wool similar to worsted wool.

**Bottle Green**
- Bottle Green is the color of dark green.

**Boubou**
- Boubou is an African robe like garment.

**Boucle'**
- Boucle' is knotted yarns used to produce fabric with a knotted and looped surface.

**Boucle Fabrics**
- Boucle' Fabrics are fabrics made from boucle' yarns yielding a knotted and looped surface.
**Bouffant Gown**
- Bouffant Gown or Tulle Skirt is a puffy sheer gown made of crisp stiffened nylon net, silk, or rayon.

**Bound and Welt**
- Bound and Welt is a sewing technique used to encase open slashes in a garment such as a Welt Pocket or Bound Buttonhole. You may sew single or double welts. (See "Sewing Answers. Com" the book by Donna and David Trumble for more details).

**Bound Buttonholes**
- Bound Buttonholes are buttonholes backed by a narrow strip of fabric to reinforce the buttonhole with fabric folds like lips to cover the hole. Faced Buttonholes, Faced Method , Faced Method for Buttonholes, and Bound Button Holes are all the same thing and refer to button holes in which a layer of fabric inserted, sewn, cut, folded under, and faced to give the button hole maximum strength. See SewingAnswer.Com for details on how to sew a Bound Button Hole.

**Bound Finish**
- Bound Finish is binding often cut on the bias of the fabric folded over the edge of a quilt and sewn down to form a bound edge.

**Bound Pocket**
- Bound Pockets are pockets that have a binding strip sewn over the slit or opening in the garment fabric and sewn down. The binding is cut on the bias for greater stretch and flexibility. Lay the bias strip along the edge of pocket right sides together. Stitch all the way around the pocket. Fold the strip over the raw edge of the fabric and top stitch the binding strip to the pocket.

**Bounds**
- Bounds is a term referring to the edge. Those elements covered with fabric to envelope raw edges and provide a finished edge are said to be bound edges. They include quilts, pockets, buttonholes, hems, etc. It also refers to operating within the parameters of the bound area. For example, when sewing if you cut outside the cutline or sew outside the seam allowance
it would be out of bounds.

**Bow**
- Bow is a fabric defect in which the weft is stretched out of proportion.

**Bow Tie**
- Bow Tie is a fabric bow tied around the neck.

**Bowler**
- Bowler is a derby hat.

**Box Coat**
- Box Coat is an overcoat or an unfitted boxy jacket.

**Box Pleat**
- A Box Pleat consists of two fabrics brought together in such a fashion as to form a square appearing pleat.

**Boxer**
- Boxers are a type of shorts.

**Boxer Shorts**
- Boxer Shorts are loose fitting underwear.

**Boxing Glove**
- Boxing Glove are mittens worn by fighters.

**Boy-leg**
- Boy-leg describes a girl’s or woman’s garments such as shorts, undergarments, or swimwear that is characterized by tight fitting garment legs that reach to mid thigh.

**Boynge**
- Boynge is a warm fabric used for thermal underwear.

**Bra**
- Bra is an undergarment designed to provide support for breasts with cups.
Bra Size
- Bra Size is the measure of the cup and the distance around the chest.

Bracelet
- Bracelet is a Piece of decorative wrist jewelry.

Bracelet Sleeve
- Bracelet Sleeve is a three quarter sleeve with no cuff.

Bradford
- Bradford is a type of yarn spinning especially wool.

Bragette
- Bragette is a material worn to accent the male groin.

Braid
- Braid is an soft ornamental rope made of twisted fibers.

Braided
- Braided is a term describing the twisting of various elements: When thread fibers are twisted to form thread the thread is said to be braided. When hair is twisted in to strands, the hair is said to be braided.

Brassard
- Brassard is an arm band.

Brassiere
- Brassiere is another name for a bra.

Break
- Break is an interruption of the growth cycle of the wool.
Break (Pants)
- Break (Pants) is the slight indentation between the knee and ankle on the crease of the pants.

Breastplate
- Breastplate is an ancient Jewish vestment worn on the chest carrying 12 gems representing the twelve tribes of Israel, worn by the high priest. It is also a piece of armor covering the chest.

Breechcloth
- Breechcloth is another name for a loincloth.

Brick Red
- Brick Red is the color of reddish brown.

Bridging Stitch
- Bridging Stitch is a stitch used to fagot or bridge between fabrics. Many stitches may be used as bridging stitches such as the standard zig zag, satin stitch, blanket stitch, etc.

Brief
- Briefs are underwear pants that are snug fitting.

Briar Stitch
- Briar Stitch is a hand stitch also commonly known as the Feather Stitch or Single Coral Stitch characterized by its feathery design. Many sewing machines include a mock Feather Stitch as well.

Brilliance
- Brilliance is a jewelry term describing the how a diamond reflects light.
**Brilliantine**
- Brilliantine is a fine woven fabric with mohair fill.

**Britches**
- Britches are pants.

**Broadcloth**
- Broadcloth is a very common high quality cotton (or cotton-poly) fabric great for many garment projects including shirts - usually in solid colors.

**Broadfall**
- Broadfall is a flap that falls from the waist of sailor pants.

**Brocade**
- Brocade is fabric with raised or floral design pattern commonly used in formalwear and upholstery, draperies, and eveningwear. Brocade is an ornamental blended fabric with motifs such as flowers, foliage, and various scenes.

**Brocatelle**
- Brocatelle is a satin weave fabric made of silk, rayon, cotton, or synthetics.

**Broderie Perse**
- Broderie Perse or "Persian Embroidery" is the technique of cutting fabric pictures of flowers or animals and then applying them as applique'.

**Brogan**
- Brogan is a heavy work shoe.

**Brogue**
- Brogue is an oxford shoe.

**Broker**
- Broker is a representative of a manufacturer to sell product to dealers or distributors.
**Bronze**
- Bronze is the color of yellow brown.

**Broomstick**
- Broomstick refers to skirts of dresses with lots of pleats and crinkles in the material.

**Brother**
- Brother International is a Japanese sewing manufacturer that offers a variety of sewing machine lines. They produce a low end line for mass marketing chains such as Walmart and Sears. They produce the Pacesetter line of upper end machines distributed through a network of independent sewing machine dealers. They also produce lines for other marketing companies branded by those companies.

**Brown**
- Brown is the color of dark mud.

**Brunette**
- Brunette is the color brown.

**Brush Train**
- Brush Train is a very short train or trailing portion of a gown that just brushes the floor and is common of gowns that are slim fit. (Sweep Train)

**Brussels**
- Brussels is a type of lace with floral designs produced by
Bubble Jet Set (BJS)
- How can I print my photos on fabric? Cotton fabric can be pretreated in preparation for quilting. Once pretreated with BJS the cotton fabric may be printed on by any jet or laser Printer. The picture produced is permanent and colorfast. The photo fabric can then be used for any number of sewing projects.

Buck
- Buck is a buckskin garment made of animal hides.

Buckles
- Buckles are fasteners used primarily to connect ends of a belt around ones waist, but may be used as fasteners in place of buttons on some jackets.

Buckram
- Buckram is a heavy fabric used as stiffener in ball caps, jackets, and elsewhere.

Buckskin
- Buckskin is a term referring to leather pants. It comes from deer hides.

Buff
- Buff is the color orange yellow.

Bulk Classing
- Bulk Classing is wool of various kinds mixed together.

Bulky Fibers
- Bulky Fibers are fat fibers or thicker fibers often nubbies on the fibers used to make thick yarns and weaves such as tweed.

Bulky Weight Yarns
- Bulky Weight Yarns are yarns with 500 to 1000 yards per pound commonly used for coats and blankets.

Bull Denim
- Bull Denim is cotton denim dyed with indigo inks.
Bun Holder/Wrap
- Bun Holder/Wrap is an accessory used to hold a headpiece on the hair or to hold the hair in the shape of a bun at the back of the head. It is often made of decorative materials including beads or lace.

Bundle
- Bundle is a group of cut fabric pieces.

Bunting
- Bunting is fabric used for flags. Also a wrap for a baby.

Burgundy
- Burgundy is the color of red purple.

Burkha
- Burkha is an Islamic woman's veil or headscarf.

Burlap
- Burlap is an inexpensive canvas like fabric commonly used for window coverings. It has a very rough open weave that tends to stretch or sag over time and fades when exposed for extended periods of time to direct sunlight. Years ago, before the age of paper or plastic grocery bags, burlap was used to package many types of goods from the grocer including potatoes.

Burling
- Burling is the process of dry finishing wool by removing as much debris as possible.

Burnoose
- Burnoose is an Arabian hooded cloak.

Burn-out Fabric
- Burn out fabric is a fabric with a special finish like brocade produced during the "burn-out printing process". Sulfuric acid is mixes with the print paste to destroy or "burn" the top layer of fabric to produce the design. The pile is burned away, but the background fabric is left intact unharmed. Following the
burn-out stage, the fabric is printed with elaborate prints such as simulated embroidery.

**Burry**
- Burry refers to wool that has certain seed pods in the fibers.

**Busby**
- Busby is a fur hat worn by military.

**Bush Jacket**
- Bush Jacket is a shirt styled jacket with pockets and belt.

**Bush Shirt**
- Bush Shirt is a floppy shirt with patch pockets.

**Business Suit**
- Business Suit is a matching set of clothing including pants and jacket designed to be worn for business purposes.

**Buskin**
- Buskin is a boot laced up to the knee.

**Bust Measurement**
- Bust Measurement Not your bra size! Measure the fullest part of the bust.

**Bustier**
- Bustier (Strapless or Corset) is a style of bodice with no straps or sleeves. Bustier is a strapless top worn as a bra or outer garment.

**Bustle**
- Bustle is a garment treatment frequently appearing on formal gowns especially wedding gowns where the fabric or train is pulled up and fastened at the back of the gown. Poofy gatherings of fabric on the back of a gown bustled in many variations including over and under bustles using buttons, hooks, ribbons, or ties to hold them in place. When a wedding gown’s train is gathered around the butt it is said to be bustled.
Butcher Paper
• Butcher Paper is a brown stiff paper used over the years by butchers and meat processors. Butcher Paper is widely used for many crafting purposes.

Butt/Butting
• Where two parts meet is called the butt. Where edges meet or where folds meet is called butt. Instructions often say, "Butt the two pieces together."

Butterfly
• A Butterfly or butterfly sleeve is a sleeve on a gown which fastens in the back of the gown forming a short sleeve just covering the edge of the shoulders. It is so named because of its butterfly wing appearance rising out of a large bow ("butt bow") or fabric flowers on the back of the gown.

Butterfly Headpiece
• Butterfly Headpiece is a partial headband that extends over the top of the head but does not reach to the ears.

Butternut
• Butternut is the color light yellow brown.

Butterscotch
• Butterscotch is the color medium yellow brown.

Button
• Button is a device used to fasten through a hole (button hole) and function as a closure for a shirt, pants, or other garment. There are many varieties of buttons including those with thread holes in them, those with shanks, those decoratively shaped or adorned, and those covered with fabric.
**Button Down**
- Button Down refers to a shirt collar that is fastened at the two corners with small buttons.

**Button Foot**
- Button Foot is a presser foot designed to hold a button in place while the sewing machine sews the button in place.

**Button Placket**
- A button placket is a finished V shaped opening in a garment that is fastened together by use of a hidden button and buttonhole.

**Button Stand**
- The position of the button as it relates to the (close, far, etc.) finished edge of the garment is called button stand. This also relates to the underlap of the button under the overlapping garment.

**Buttonhole**
- A buttonhole is a reinforced hole in the fabric to receive a button or fastener.
**Buttonhole Bead**
- Buttonholes are formed by two parallel narrow satin stitches. In older machines, the button hole was formed using a four step system where one long satin stitch side is formed followed by a bar tack and a second satin stitch side formed followed by a final bar tack. The two sides are each identified as buttonhole beads, and a single side is a buttonhole bead.

**Buttonhole Chisel**
- Once a button hole is stitched the fabric between the buttonhole beads must be cut. A buttonhole chisel is a tool with a sharp metal blade used to cut the button hole open. The chisel is lined up in the button hole and tapped down into the fabric against a self sealing mat or wooden block. Once the fabric inside the buttonhole has been cut open, it is ready to receive the button.

**Buttonhole Cutter**
- Like the buttonhole chisel, this is a tool (flat knife) used to cut open the button. It commonly uses a sharp flat blade much like a razor blade. It is worth noting that the buttonhole can be cut open with other tools such as scissors or seam rippers, but great care must be taken not to cut the threads of the bar tack on either end of the buttonhole.

**Buttonhole Elastic**
- Some elastic belting has periodic slits in it to receive a button. Buttoning the waistband enables you to lengthen or shorten the waistband adjusting the fit of the pants. Button-up elastic is a popular brand.

**Buttonhole Foot**
- Buttonhole Foot is a presser foot designed to sew a variety of different buttonholes. There are several different versions of this foot, but generally it is spring loaded and enables consistent buttonholes.
**Buttonhole Space Tape**
- Spacing buttons and buttonholes has often been a challenge, but with the use of buttonhole space tape the sewer can layout the buttonholes quite effectively. Once the buttonholes are sewn, the spacing tape tears away leaving just the buttonholes.

**Buttonhole Stand**
- The position of the button hole as it relates to the finished edge of the garment overlap is called buttonhole stand.

**Buttonhole Twist**
- A super strong heavy 8 to 10 weight thread with multiple threads twisted together is used to sew handwork buttonholes, suit jacket buttonholes, coat button holes, and to sew on buttons.

**Buttons**
- Buttons are fasteners made of many different materials including plastic, metal, cloth covered, bone, wood, etc., and many different styles, sizes, and shapes. Buttons appear on shirts, blouses, jackets, coats, pants, skirts, and just about any garment that needs fastening.
 TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Byssus
• Byssus is a high quality ancient linen.

Cabaretta

Caberet
• Caberet is a skimpy show garment worn by exotic dancers.

Café Curtain
• Café Curtains are short single layer draperies commonly hung in kitchen windows.

Calendering
• Calendering is a fabric finishing process used to produce fabrics with high luster, glaze, embossing, and moire' finishes.

Calico
• Calico was made famous among the women of the old west. This all cotton fabric often printed with small floral patterns became popular for dressmaking. Today the term is freely applied to cotton quilting fabrics with small floral designs.

Cam
• A cam is a device inside a sewing machine similar to a gear. The sewing machine shaft drives the cam around and around while small mechanical fingers track along the outer perimeter of the cam to move the needle position forming stitches. Older sewing machines used cams that could be installed and replaced to create different stitch designs. More recent machines have built the cams into the design of the machine, while modern computerized machines have replaced cams with computer control boards and pulse motors to generate stitches.

Cambric
Handkerchiefs, aprons, and underwear are often made with Cambric a soft woven cloth or linen fabric. Cambric is a goatskin refined and softened to produce a delicate fabric for garments including pants.

**Camel Hair**

- Camel Hair is hair of the two humped Bactrian camel used for coats, sweaters, and suits.

**Camisole**

- A camisole is a short sleeveless blouse often used under see through fabrics.

**Camp Pockets**

- Camp Pockets are squared off pockets sewn on the outside of a garment.

**Cam Stack**

- Cam Stack is the control mechanism in many sewing machines used to produce the stitches. The Cam stack has multiple layers of cams each with various bumps, ridges, or grooves that are matched with a cam tracker lever. As the cam turns the tracker is pushed back and forth and this motion is transmitted through the sewing machine to produce needle movements and varied stitches.
**Cam Tracker**
- Cam Tracker is a small lever that moves in and out against the cam surface to produce sewing machine stitches.

**Candlewicking**
- Candlewicking is a type of embroidery characterized by a design made with French knots.

**Canvas Fabric**
- Canvas Fabric is a heavy tightly woven fabric designed for outdoor use.

**Canvas Work**
- Canvas Work (Stitchery, Canvas Embroidery) is a term referring to any type of needlecraft applied to canvas fabric.

**Cap**
- Cap is a headpiece with many variations including the baseball styled cap with front bill and the more formal Juliet styled fabric or lace cap worn close to the head.

**Cap Sleeve**
- Cap Sleeve is a style of short sleeve which is barely covers the top of the shoulder. It looks like a cap attached to the shoulder and serves as a small short sleeve providing minimum covering - it may be firm like a cap bill or not.

**Cape**
- A Cape is a free flowing garment or wrap that is loosely worn over the shoulders and around the body.

**Capri Pants**
- Capri Pants are pants characterized by their straight cut and taper up to mid-calf.

**Caps**
- Caps are a hat with no brim, ie. Baseball cap.

**Carat**
- Carat is jewelry term defining the weight of diamonds and
other precious stones according to the metric system (1 Carat = 200 milligrams or 100 points).

**Carbon**
- Carbon Diamonds is a term referring to the carbon composition or origins of diamonds and the presence of small dark carbon spots left inside the diamond.

**Card**
- Card or Embroidery Design Card is a digital memory exchange devise similar to a floppy disc which may be written or saved to by a computer and placed into a card slot on the embroidery machine.

**Cardboard Cutting Table**
- Cutting board Cutting Table is a table designed for cutting. In the kitchen, you may find a cutting board cutting table with a wooden cutting board as the top of the table. Cutting tables designed to cut sewing fabric and patterns are often covered with cutting boards or cutting mat surfaces.

**Cardigan**
- A Cardigan sweater or jacket opens the front center full length (usually no collar) but may have a zipper or button fasteners.

**Carding**
- Carding is the process of filtering out fibers too small to weave, dirt, and other impurities leaving a thin layer of fibers.

**Cargo**
- Cargo is a style with large flap covered and pleated pocket.

**Carpenter Pants**
- Carpenter pants or shorts are pants with five pockets and the characteristic "hammer holder" beside the back pocket.

**Cascade Ruffles**
- How do you make cascade ruffles? Definition: a cascade ruffle is a group of ruffles overlapping each other creating a waterfall or cascading effect. To sew a cascade ruffle cut strips of fabric and finish one edge with a rolled hem or other appropriate finish (may be done before or after making the ruffle). Using a ruffer...
foot on your sewing machine guide the edge to be ruffled through the sewing machine which gathers and sews at the same time. You may sew the ruffle to a garment while sewing the ruffle or attach it after making the ruffle. Simply attach the successive ruffles so that the top ruffle overlaps the one beneath it.

**Cases for Pillows**
- Pillows frequently become soiled from hair oils and other wear, therefore, a removable covering or case is designed to keep the pillow fresh while providing frequent opportunity for laundering the case.

**Cashmere**
- Cashmere is a luxury fiber made from the Kashmir goat. It is used in coats, dresses, suits, and sweaters.

**Casing**
- Casing is the fabric wrapping or enveloping drawstring, elastic, or other material.

**Casings**
- When there are more than one casing in a project they are referred to as casings.

**Cassocks**
- Cassocks (soutane) are church robes.

**Catch Stitch**
- A Catch stitch is a stitch that grabs only a thread or two of the fabric such as a blind hem stitch (when it zigs over to catch the fabric), or a tailor's hand stitch for similar purposes to minimize the appearance of stitches seen.

**Cathedral Train**
- The Cathedral Train is a flowing treatment of fabric trailing the wedding or formal gown seven to eight feet behind and is the most common type of train. It has been called the Monarch Train or Formal Wedding Train.

**Cathedral Veil**
• Cathedral Veil This term describes a tier of veiling that is approximately 126" in length (about 2.5 feet from your waist). Brides often order Cathedral Length veils detachable so that they can be removed during the reception.

Cathedral Window
• Cathedral Design is a quilt block design that uses fabric folding to reveal an inner window of a different fabric.

Cavalry Twill
• As you might expect from the name, Cavalry Twill is a popular wrinkle resistant twill fabric popular for military uniforms.

Caviar Beading
• Caviar Beading is a technique for decorating fabrics with small beads by creating an adhesive design and attaching the beads.

CB Hook
• The cb hook system is a special oscillating hook system patented by Bernina that works like any other oscillating hook system, except more precise.

Cellulose
• Cellulose is a pasty substance derived from plant cells. It is used to produce man made fibers such as rayon, acetate, and triacetate.

Center Back Measurement
• Center Back Measurement or Back Shoulder Measurement is the measurement of the shoulders across the back taken by measuring from shoulder blade to shoulder blade (not all the way around the body).

Celtic Motif
• Celtic Motif is a design or graphic reflective of ancient Celtic art which may be converted to embroidery designs, stamps, or other graphic elements.

Celtic Quilting
• Celtic Quilting is a quilt block design made with thin bias tubes and strips and assembled in the Celtic form.
**Centered Zipper**
- Centered Zipper is a zipper that is sewn into the middle of a seam and the laps (fabric to which the zipper is attached) meet in the middle covering the zipper. Also known as a double lap zipper.

**Chador/Chaddar**
- Chador/Chaddar is a headscarf like the Khimar which leaves the face exposed and reaches to the waist. Face coverings are called Afghan.

**Chaining or Chain Stitching**
- Connecting pieces of fabric together with a continuous stitchline is called chaining. When chain piecing, it is common to stitch pairs of fabric pieces together without breaking the stitch line. This is also called: chain stitching, using a chain stitch, and the interconnective stitch is the chain loop.

**Chain Piecing**
- How do you do Chain Piecing? Sew one quilt piece after another in a continuous unbroken chain of pieces commonly done with Log Cabin Block, Stip Piecing, Assembly Line Piecing.

**Chalk Pencil**
- Chalk Pencil is a pencil filled with chalk instead of lead. The chalk is used to mark fabrics.

**Challis Fabric**
- Challis is a woven fabric with slight brushed surface made of cotton, rayon, or wool.

**Challenge/Quilt Challenge**
- Challenge/Quilt Challenge is a contest or competition among quilters involving a variety of standards (size, fabric requirements, style). A challenge may be sponsored by a local quilt guild, quilt store, or national organization.

**Chambray**
- Chambray is a fabric finish that looks like a fine cotton denim and is often used for shirts and pajamas. It may be made of
cotton, silk, or other manufactured fibers.

**Chamelaine**
- Charmelaine is a ribbed twill fabric used for dressmaking.

**Chamois Cloth**
- Chamois cloth is a napped simulated leather made of cotton and used in dusters, interlining, and storage bags.

**Chamoisette**
- Chamoisette is a fabric used to make gloves and made with double knit construction (cotton, rayon, or nylon)

**Champagne**
- Champagne is the color gray yellow brown.

**Channel Quilting**
- Channel Quilting is a technique for finish quilting in which parallel lines of stitching create channels across the quilt.

**Chantilly Lace**
- Chantilly Lace is a mesh lace made of silk, linen, or synthetic lace of very thin cording embroidered with ornate flowers, scallops, and designs.

**Chapeau**
- Chapeau is a hat.

**Chapel Train**
- The Chapel Train is a three to four foot long flowing fabric treatment that trails behind the gown.

**Chapel Veil**
- Chapel Veil is a type of veil that reaches over 100 inches in length often detachable after ceremonies.

**Chaps**
- Chaps are leather over leg coverings worn on top of the regular pants to protect against thorns, burrs, and other sources of scrapes.
Charcoal
- Charcoal is the color dark gray.

Charcoal Fiber
- Charcoal Fiber is what is left after burning wood. It makes a good deodorizer.

Charm Quilt
- A charm quilt is a pieced quilt usually one patch made from different fabrics with no two pieces identical.

Charmeuse
- Charmeuse is a delicate soft and lightweight satin fabric blend of silk and rayon. Charmeuse is fabric produced by mercerization and schreinerization to produce a soft finish.

Charted Needlework
- Charted Needlework is sewing a satin stitch over a metal bar (to give loft to the stitches) on a piece of paper pattern chart following the colors as indicated on the chart.

Charm Square
- A charm quilt is a pieced quilt usually one patch made from different fabrics with no two pieces identical.

Chartreuse
- Chartreuse is fabric produced by mercerization and schreinerization to produce a soft finish.

Chased
- Chased refers to a cotton fabric finish that has varying surface effects such as bright and dim areas.

Chastity Belt
- Chastity Belt is a Middle Age device to prevent sexual intercourse.

Cheater Cloth
- Cheater cloth is fabric with preprinted quilt block printed on it. This contrasts with quilt patterns created by piecing of cloth cut out and sewn together. During the mid 1900’s the first
cheater cloth appeared, but during the early twentieth century a variety of patterns such as the Log Cabin and Charm Quilts became available. The Dresden Plate was offered as a Cheater cloth design by Sears and Roebuck in the 1930's. Today These and other classic quilt designs are available on cheater cloth including Double Wedding Ring and Grandmother's Flower Garden.

Cheater Panel
- Cheater Panel also known as cheater's cloth is a preprinted quilt block that looks like a pieced block and is used as is to assemble a quilt.

Cheater Quilt
- Cheater Quilt is quilt top that is preprinted in the quilt design stitched together according to the design and finished as a quilt.

Chemise
- Chemise is a protective garment worn to protect against sweat and dirt. Chemise or Skimmer is a straight unbelted dress (varying sleeves and lengths).

Chenille
- Chenille is a fabric often stacked and frayed to provide a feathery finish to the edges. It is also a soft fabric used to make sweaters.

Chenille Needles
- Like tapestry needles these are extra strong needles. They are used for heavy embroidery on closely woven fabrics and have sharp points to penetrate the fabric easily.

Cheongsam
- Cheongsam is a type of Asian dress with a mandarin collar and slip skirt.

Cherry
- Cherry is the color of medium red.

Chesterfield
• Chesterfield is an overcoat with velvet collar.

**Chestnut**

• Chestnut is the color gray to red brown.

**Chevoit**

• Chevoit is a tweed or homespun wool.

**Chiffon**

• Chiffon is a lightweight woven sheer fabric with very fluid draping qualities that is often used for evening dresses. It may be made from silk, rayon, or other synthetic fibers. Chiffon is often used over heavier fabrics or as a background for decorative embroidery or embellishments.

**Chiffon Velvet**

• Chiffon Velvet is a light soft draping velvet fabric with rayon pile and silk or rayon back.

**Chimere**

• Chimere is an Anglican clergy robe without sleeves.

**China Silk**

• Coco Chanel and other famous designers love to use China Silk inside jackets because it is so lightweight and breathes. It is less common elsewhere, because it tends to wrinkle and is extremely fragile.

**Chinchilla**

• Chinchilla is a warm fabric with extra fillings made of cotton or wool or synthetics often used for blankets.

**Chino**

• Chino is a rough and tumble cotton fabric with a slight sheen great for work clothes and casual pants.

**Chintz (cotton) Fabric**

• Chintz is a cotton fabric used for slipcovers and curtains. It has a glazed finish making it very attractive.

**Chiton**
• Chiton is an ancient Greek robe like garment.

**Chocolate**
• Chocolate is the color brown gray. Of course, chocolate is also a most common object of a woman’s affections. Some have even suggested that chocolate is the fourth food group.

**Choker**
• Choker is a snug fitting necklace or collar.

**Choli**
• A Choli is an Indian blouse, commonly worn with the Lengha full length skirt.

**Chopine**
• Chopine is a shoe with a high sole worn in 17th century.

**Chrisom**
• Chrisom is a baptismal robe or cloth that is pure white symbolizing innocence.

**Chukka**
• Chukka is a leather boot with eyelets or buckle.

**Chunni**
• Chunni also known as Dupatta is a traditional Indian wrap or scarf.

**Churidhar**
• Churidhar are traditional Indian pants which are fitted at the ankle.

**Cincture**
• Cincture is a clerical sash.

**Cinereous**
• Cinereous is the color bray black.

**Cinnamon**
• Cinnamon is the color light yellow brown.
Circular Embroidery
- Circular Embroidery is a technique of sewing beautiful embroidery patterns using circles and spirals.

Circular Knitting
- Circular Knitting is a form of knitting in seamless tubes or circles done with machines using latch-hook needles on a round frame.

Circular Skirt
- Circular Skirt is a skirt that is made in the shape of a circle and flows from the waist without gathers.

Cire'
- Cire' is a waxed fabric finish that has a high glaze.

Cisele Velvet
- Cisele Velvet is a velvet fabric characterized by contrasting cut and uncut loops.

Clamshell
- Clamshell is a quilting pattern of interlocking circles.

Clapper
- When you want a crease in your garment, the steam iron and clapper are vital tools. The steam iron makes the fabric pliable. Once the fabric has been ironed, the clapper is used to press in a crease. The tool itself is usually made of wood and is used to flatten the crease area while drawing the heat from the iron out of fabric leaving the crease "set".

Clappers
- If one clapper is useful more than one is always handy. They are made in different sizes and having a variety to draw from can make the job easier.

Claret
- Claret is the color dark purple red.

Clean Finish
• On the edges of facings, hems, and seams it is common to simply turn the fabric edge over once and stitch. This is called a clear finish.

**Clear Elastic**
• A very stretchy see through elastic is called clear elastic.

**Clearance**
• Clearance is defined as the distance between two things. It may apply to a variety of situations.

**Clearance About The Eye of Needle**
• Stitches are formed when the needle brings the upper thread down through the needleplate and back up. As the needle rises, a loop of thread forms on the scarf (back) of the needle. The hook runs behind the needle to pick up the thread and proceed to create the stitch. The distance between the needle and the hook is called the clearance about the eye of the needle.

**Clerical Collar**
• Clerical Collar is a collar that fits snugly around the neck often with black or white coloration and worn by religious leaders.

**Clip**
• When laying out a pattern, it is best to make very short cuts into the seam allowance instead of cutting out bulky notches. These short cuts are called clips or clip marks. Clips may also be used to relieve stress in darts, or curved seams.

**Cloak**
• Cloak is a loose coat, cape, or outer garment.

**Cloche**
• Cloche is a snug fitting hat.

**Clodhopper**
• Clodhopper is a heavy work boot.

**Clog**
• Clog is a shoe with a tall thick sole.
**Cloque**  
- Cloque is embossed fabric with ornate designs.

**Close**  
- Close is the final finishing of a seam whether by hand or by machine.

**Closeout**  
- Closeout is a retail sale aimed at eliminating inventory.

**Closures**  
- Closures refers to any type of devise used to close or fasten garments together such as button and buttonholes, snaps, zippers, hook and eye.

**Cloth**  
- Fabric or cloth is a flexible material made for purposes of making clothing, covering furniture, etc. from natural and synthetic (man made) fibers. These fibers are made into threads, yarn, and fabric through weaving, knitting, and chemical and pressure based manufacturing processes.

**Cloth Yard**  
- Cloth Yard is like a baker's dozen (13 donuts for the price of 12) which measures 37 inches in stead of 36.

**Clothes Horse**  
- Clothes Horse is a rack or frame to hold clothing.

**Clothes Line**  
- Clothes Line is a rope used for handing wet clothing for drying.

**Clothes Moth**  
- Clothes Moth is an insect that eats fabrics especially woolens.

**Clothes Pin**  
- Clothes Pin is device to hold clothing on a clothesline. It may consist of a piece of wood or plastic with two forked legs or it may have a small spring scissor clamp.
Clothier
• Clothier is a manufacturer of clothing or garments.

Clothing
• Clothing is body coverings also called garments, attire, fashion, or garb.

Cloud
• Cloud Cluster is a jewelry term referring to diamond flaws or inclusions.

Clover Needles
• Hand sewing on leather requires strong needles with a tapered point with three sharp edges to pierce leather without tearing it - Clover Needles.

Clutch 1
• The sewing machine clutch is a device that allows the sewing machine to spin the bobbin winder mechanism while the rest of the sewing machine remains idle.

Clutch 2
• A clutch may also be a small purse or clutch bag without a strap or handle.

Clutch Bag
• Clutch Bag is a small purse usually without a strap.

Clutch Wheel
• The clutch wheel is the small usually silver wheel adjacent to the sewing machine hand wheel that serves as a clutch to engage the whole sewing machine or just operate the bobbin winder.

CMYK
• CMYK is an abbreviation for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black.

Coat
• Coat is an article of outer clothing worn to keep one warm and protect against inclement weather.
Coat of Mail
- Coat of Mail is a medieval armor covering made of pieces of chain or metal tied together.

Coatdress
- Coatdress is a front buttoned dress styled like a coat.

Coating
- Coating is (A) fabric used for coats, (B) a material used to cover another surface as in a coating of rubber or varnish.

Coats and Clark Thread
- Coats and Clark is a brand of sewing thread most commonly sold in mass merchandise centers. Their most common thread consists of a cotton cover end spun polyester dual duty sewing thread.

Cobalt
- Cobalt is a color of blue.

Cobalt Blue
- Cobalt Blue is the color green blue.

Cocoa
- Cocoa is the color of medium brown.

Cockle
- Cockle is puckering or bumpiness flaws in fabrics.

Coif
- Coif is a head covering or cap worn during the 16th century to protect against cold.

Coin Purse
- A coin purse is small bag to hold money, but it makes a great sewing project used to teach a variety of skills in a short period of time.

Coir
• Coir is a fiber produced from coconuts used for cord.

**Coldcut**
• Coldcut is processing method used to produce large format poster labels.

**Collar**
• Collar is a portion of a shirt, jacket, or similar garment that frames around the neck.

**Collar Stand**
• Collar Stand is the part of the collar that stands up beside the neck.

**Color**
• Color is a term relating to the human visual perception of light reflecting off objects. Black absorbs all the light color spectrum. White reflects all the light color spectrum. All other colors reflect a portion of the light spectrum and are hence described as their various color, shade, and hews. Color is how we perceive the different qualities of the light reflected or emitted by the colors. We define colors in terms of what we see: objects reflect more or less light, absorb more or less light, appear in varying shades of brightness or color saturation. These features arise from peculiarities of wave lengths, luminance, and purity which we can create by using dyes, pigment, paint, and other means. When we see the American flag we see what we call Red, White, and Blue. When we blush our skin reddens. When we look at a piece of artwork, a painting, or fabrics, we are drawn to the colors - how the attract or repel, how the make us feel, how the combine together, how the contrast each other. We group colors into warm colors (blacks, browns, tans, golds, and beige colors ), cool colors (white, ivory, silver, and gray), and neutral colors(black, white, silver, gray, and brown ). Generally, each color has its warm, cool, and neutral shades. We also consider primary or foundation colors from which other colors are derived (by mixing pigments) including: Red, Green, and Blue. While white is actually the absence of color or the full reflection of the color spectrum of light, black is the total absorption of color or its color light spectrum.
**Color Management**
- Color Scheme is the selection of colors and how they are used in a given project.

**Color Scheme**
- The degree to which a fabric resists fading (due to exposure to sunlight, washing, or environmental conditions) is called colorfastness.

**Colorfast**
- A Column Skirt or Straight Skirt or Pencil Skirt is a skirt without a flare or fullness at the hem or waistline.

**Column Skirt**
- A Column Skirt or Straight Skirt or Pencil Skirt is a skirt without a flare or fullness at the hem or waistline.

**Combed Cotton**
- Combed Cotton is a refined cotton with ruffage, impurities, and short fibers eliminated or "combed" away.

**Combination Facing**
- The all-in-one facing is called combination facing. Facing overlaps garment pieces instead of being attached to the individual pieces.

**Combination Strips**
- Combination Strips are strips of cloth sewn together be cut into shapes.

**Combing**
- Combing is a treatment process of further eliminating debris and short fibers from the fabric following carding.

**Comforter**
- Comforter is long knitted scarf or to a quilted bedding cover that is extra puffy and usually both sides are of single fabrics to warm and provide a sense of comfort while lounging in or out of bed.

**Commercial Sewing Machine**
• A Commercial Sewing Machine is a sewing machine that is used for manufacturing or commercial use.

Compacting
• Compacting is a processing technique used to control fabric shrinkage.

Compare SAE and Metric
• SAE is the American system of measurement (inches, feet, yards). Metric is the system of measure used by most of the world (meters, centimeters, millimeters, etc.) See Conversion chart.

Complementary Colors
• Complementary Colors are colors that look good together.

Complete
• Each section of a project must often be finished before final assembly. This may involve stitching, pressing, trimming, and anything else to finish the section before proceeding. When everything is ready for the next step, the former step is said to be complete.

Computer Aided Design
• Computer Aided Design is the use of computer software to design clothing patterns, embroidery, or other sewing projects.

Computerized Sewing Machine
• Computerized Sewing Machine is a sewing machine containing computer boards, circuits, pulse motors, and similar features. The computerized sewing machine enables the sewer to enjoy unrivaled stitch potential, smooth operations, quiet machine operation, and fantastic control.

Concealed Snap
• A concealed snap is a snap fastener that is hidden inside a placket, under a collar, or elsewhere.

Congress Cloth
• Congress Cloth is a cotton fabric good for samplers.

Construction Stitching
• In contrast to stay-stitching which is intended to prevent fabric from undue stretch or finish stitching with is designed for appearance, construction stitching is stitching that builds the garment of project including seams, hems, darts, and stitches that hold a garment together.

**Contact Cement**
• Rubber Cement or Contact Cement is a contact adhesive used in many crafting projects.

**Continuous Bias**
• Continuous Bias is a fabric tape or strip that is cut on the bias or diagonal of the fabric and fastened together or a long roll of bias "tape".

**Contour**
• Contour means curves. Patterns and fitting techniques must anticipate body contours or curves to provide appropriate fit.

**Conversation Print**
• Conversation Print also known as novelty fabric is fabric with some type of interesting motif printed on it.

**Converter**
• A Converter is a person or company that purchases gray goods to process, print, or finish to a buyer's order or design.

**Convertible Collar**
• A convertible collar is a rolled collar sewn to the neckline which may be worn open or closed.

**Cool Colors**
• Cool is a term describing the color hue (white, ivory, silver, and gray or lighter color tones) ranging between violet and green.

**Cool Wool**
• Cool Wool is a trade name for a lightweight wool. Many summer men's suits are made in this fabric.

**Coolie Hat**
• Coolie Hat is a straw hat with a cone shape used to protect
against the sun.

**Coonskin**
- Coonskin is a cap made famous by Davy Crocket.

**Cope**
- Cope is a long clerical garment.

**Coppery**
- Coppery is the color red to brown orange.

**Coral**
- Coral is the color of deep pink.

**Corded Satin Stitch**
- Corded Satin Stitching (Couching) is a technique for creating a three dimensional stitch appearance by sewing a zig zag stitch with short stitch length over cording to give that special decorative appearance.

**Cord-filled Tubing**
- Cord-filled Tubing is covered cording without a lip used in home dec applications and as a belt in garment applications.

**Cording**
- Cording is a yarn, string, or rope used as a drawstring. It is often covered by bias strips. Cording may be used for decorative applications by using zig zag stitches or other overcasting stitches.

**Cording Foot**
- A cording foot is a special presser foot with a deep channel in it to accommodate piping, beads, or other dimensional seams. A brand name for this foot is the Pearls N' Piping® foot.

**Cordless Shears**
- Cordless Shears are electric scissors powered by battery.

**Cords**
- Cords is a slang term for corduroy pants, and a term that refers to heavy or thick ropelike thread added as an embellishment on
many projects.

**Corduroy**
- Corduroy is a fabric made of cotton that uses cut-pile weave. Ridges are formed on the surface of the fabric using additional yarns. The ridges are obvious when the pile is cut.

**Corduroys**
- Corduroys are pants made of corduroy fabric.

**Core-Spun Yarns**
- Core-Spun Yarns are yarns or threads composed of a middle strand made usually of small polyester filaments that have been spun like cotton candy into a moderately strong but abrasive thread, and an outer wrapping usually of cotton to give a softer finish to the thread. Also called cotton covered polyester thread. This has long been used a household sewing thread because it offers an inexpensive thread with a fairly strong core and a soft outer wrapping. It is important to note, however, that this is the poorest quality thread you should ever use on your sewing machine. It tends to collect knotted lint in the machine tension discs and at the eye of the needle causing havoc with sewing stitch tensions. It is therefore, recommended that better quality thread be used whenever possible: long staple 100% polyester is a great general use thread, and long staple 100% cotton thread is great for quilting and sewing on cottons.

**Corner Block**
- A quilt with borders or sash using butt end joints instead of mitered joints will often use quilt pieces sewn at the corner joints of the quilt as corner blocks.

**Corner Square Triangle**
- Corner Square Triangle is a quilting technique in which a corner square of fabric has its corner cut off by applying a triangle of a different fabric sewn on its diagonal (fabric folded over and pressed to the outside corner of the background square and trimming excess) - Result: corner of a corner square is covered by a second fabric thus two different fabrics show.
Cornerstones
- Cornerstones are square fabric pieces set at the four corners of a block or quilt to match the sashing.

Cornflower
- Cornflower is a purple blue.

Coronal
- Coronal is a headpiece that circles the head as a symbol of certain status or rank.

Coronet
- Coronet is a decorative headband or wreath won on the head.

Corselet
- Corselet is a combination of a bra and girdle.

Corselette
- Corselette is a combination of a bra and girdle.

Corset
- Corset is a snug fitting usually undergarment designed to project an hourglass figure. It is usually laced up the back and made with boning to lift the breasts. Corset or Bustier is a type of outer bodice without straps or sleeves often with boning and designed to lace up the back.

Corset Top
- A Corset Top is a strapless bodice with boning and form fitted. It has laces or snap closures styled like the traditional lady's corset.

Corsets
- Corsets is a garment designed to slim the tummy.

Costume
- Costume is a set of clothing created to give the appearance of a person, place, thing, or fashion period. In simple terms, a costume is a clothing ensemble that represents some think special like a Ship's Captain, a Pirate, a Witch, a Princess, a Knight, or other character.
Cothurnaus
- Cothurnaus is an ancient Greek or Roman boot to make an actor look taller than normal.

Cotton
- Cotton is a vegetable crop whose natural fibers growing in the seed pods of the plant are used to produce yarn and fabric. The fibers naturally occur 1/2 inches to 2 inches long. The longer fibers are used to produce the highest quality yarns and fabrics. The most common types of cotton are the American Upland Cotton, Egyptian Cotton, Pima Cotton, and Sea Island Cotton.

Cotton Covered Polyester
- Thread made with a polyester core wrapped in cotton fibers is called cotton covered polyester thread.

Cotton Linters
- Cotton Linters are manufacturing devises used to remove debris and impurities from the cotton. Fibers are cut in multiple passes across cutting blades producing first and second cut linters.

Cotton Netting
- Cotton netting is a fine mesh fabric that has open holes all over it made from cotton.

Cotton Poly Combos
- Cotton polyester blend fabrics are extremely popular for many purposes because of the combined qualities of the natural cotton fibers and the strength of the synthetic polyester fibers. Rain-No-Stain and Special Suede are two products used in home décor to line draperies, upholstery, pillows, etc. Both are available in white and cream colors.

Couching
- Couching (Corded Satin Stitching) is a technique for creating a three dimensional stitch appearance by sewing a zig zag stitch with short stitch length over cording to give that special decorative appearance. Couching Stitch is a hand embroidery stitch in which two threads (usually a thicker and a thinner thread) and two needles are used, and a thicker thread is laid or
set in position and the second thinner thread stitches over it hold it in place.

**Couching Stitch**
- Couching Stitch is a hand embroidery stitch in which two threads (usually a thicker and a thinner thread) and two needles are used, and a thicker thread is laid or set in position and the second thinner thread stitches over it hold it in place.

**Count**
- Count is a term that refers to the number of threads per inch calculated by counting the number of warp threads (ends) and multiplying that times the number of weft or fill threads (picks).

**Course**
The crossgrain of knit fabrics is called its course.

**Courture**
- Courture is a term referring to fashion design.

**Couture House**
- Courture House is a fashion designer company.

**Cover Plate**
- A sewing machine often has two covers over the bobbin area and beneath the presser foot and needle. The cover through which the needle passes is called the needle plate. The other cover is called the cover plate.

**Cover Up**
- Cover Up is a loose fitting outer garment.

**Coverall**
- Coverall is protective outer clothing worn during work to protect clothing.

**Covered Button**
- When you think of buttons, you may think of the millions of plastic buttons used for shirts and blouses, but a fancier button finish is a button covered with fabric. Special button making kits enable the seamstress to create fabric covered buttons to
match or contrast with a garment. To make a covered button, there are several different techniques. Some kits use a rivet styled set of metal grips that fit together fastening the fabric over the button. Other buttons involve using fabric glue.

**Coverlet**
- Coverlet is another name for a bedspread.

**Covert**
- Covert is a particular weave of fabric with tightly twisted yarns for great durability. Wool covert is made of wool and used for raincoats, while cotton covert is made of cotton and used for work and sports wear.

**Cowboy Boot**
- Cowboy Boot is a special shoe with a high Cuban styled heal and high arch well suited to riding horses with stirrups.

**Cowboy Hat**
- Cowboy Hat is a wide brimmed hat also known as the ten-gallon hat.

**Cowl Neck**
- A Cowl Neck is a swag styled neckline with material draped loosely across the front or back (may be used as hood).

**Coxcomb**
- Coxcomb is an old name for a medieval jester's cap.

**Cramoisie**
- Cramoisie is a reddish cloth.

**Crash**
- Crash is a coarse linen fabric used for book binding, clothing, draperies, and towels.

**Crash Helmet**
- Crash Helmet is protective headgear.
Cravat
- Cravat is a scarf or necktie.

Crazy Quilting/Quilt
- Crazing quilting is quilting with random fabrics sewn on a foundation fabric and squared. There is no set pattern or design for the overall quilt. Irregular and scrap pieces are commonly used. Silks, velvets, and embroidery are often used in crazy quilts with a muslin foundation fabric.

Crazy Patch
- Crazy Patch is a quilt square made by randomly sewing pieces of miscellaneous fabrics to a foundation piece and trimming the square edges.

Cream
- Cream is the color pale yellow.

Crease Line
- Crease Line is a folded and pressed crease along a line of a garment such as the crease in a pair of slacks.

Creepere
- Creepere is a one piece child's or toddler's outfit.

Creeping
- Creeping is the tendency of fabric to slip, move, or creep away or out of position during sewing, cutting, or other operations.

Crepe De China Fabric
- Crepe de chine is fabric with silk warp and crepe twist fill threads creating a soft playable fabric.

Crepe/ Crape
- Crepe/ Crape is a thin crinkled fabric.

Crepe-backed Satin
- Crepe-backed satin is a fabric with one side dull and crepe and the other side shiny and smooth. It is used in formal dresses
and looks great when cut on the bias.

**Crepon**
- Crepon is a wave or crinkled surface effect on crepe fabric wherein the thread twist is varied (loose or tight tension on thread twist).

**Crescent**
- Crescent is a headpiece covered with lace or beaded fabric that extends over the top and back of the head combining the features of a crown and a wreath.

**Crests**
- Crests are ornate or decorative plumes appearing on top of a hat, helmet, coat of arms, or otherwise descriptive of the top of something: hills, wave, etc.

**Cretonne**
- Cretonne is a weave or finish of fabric (cotton, linen, rayon) in which the warp is denser and finer than the fill threads creating a fabric that lacks luster, is usually reversible, and is printed with a wide range of designs. The fabric is commonly found in upholstery, draperies, bedding, and sportswear.

**Crew Sock**
- Crew Sock is a short ribbed sock or stocking.

**Crewel**
- Crewel is a thin woolen yarn used for embroidery and making narrow edging called crewel lace.

**Crewel Embroidery**
- Crewel Embroidery (Jacobean Embroidery) is hand embroidery using wool fabric.

**Crewel Needle**
- A Crewel Needle is a hand sewing medium sharp needle with an oval eye used for crewel work, smocking, or embroidery.

**Crewelslackly**
- Crewelslackly is a wool yarn used for embroidery.
**Crew-neck**
- A Crew Neck is a neckline made of ribbed banding for close fit at the base of the neck.

**Crew-Socks**
- Crew socks are socks with fold over tops and heels.

**Crimp**
- Crimp is the normal appearance or texture wave of wool.

**Crimping**
- Easing fabric into the line of stitching is a method called crimping or crowding.

**Crimson**
- Crimson is the color purple red.

**Crinkled**
- When a fabric is intentionally caused to wrinkle into many small folds, bends, and turns, it said to be crinkled.

**Crinoline**
- Crinoline is a light woven fabric with low thread count which is stiffened with horse-hair to create a bell shaped skirt (18th Century style), but replaced by the bustle.

**Crochet**
- Crochet is a needlework system of interlocking looped stitches formed by a single hook and single yarn.

**Crochet Hook**
• Crochet Hook is a hooked needle used for crochet needlework.

Crocking
• When dye in the fabric is not colorfast and tends to rub off, it is called crocking.

Cropped Top or Jacket
• To crop means to cut. A cropped top or jacket is a hem that is cut along the waistline.

Crosscut
• In strip quilting, it is common to cut across combination strips to form pieces for design assembly.

Crossgrain
• Crossgrain also known as weft or fill are the threads running from side to side in a fabric.

Crosshatching
• Crosshatching creates diagonal gridwork by two sets of parallel diagonal lines crossing one another.

Crossstitch
• Cross-stitch is a technique of hand embroidery usually using aida cloth as a foundation. Cross-stitch employs either the Danish method (complete a line of half stitches and then restitch back to form an X "her and there") or traditional method where each cross is completed before stitching the next.

Crosswise Grain
• Perpendicular or across the fabric lengthwise grainline, running from selvage to selvage, lies the welt of the fabric also known as the crosswise grain. The crosswise grain always has more stretch or give than the lengthwise grain. One way to identify the grain of a fabric is to hold it up selvage to selvage and gently pull. The hold the fabric 90 degrees offset and repeat the gentle tug. You will note some slight give on the lengthwise grain, more stretch across the grain (crosswise grain), and the most stretch is the diagonal stretch known as bias.
Crotch
• Where the two legs of pants join it is described as the fork or the crotch.

Crowding
• Easing fabric into the line of stitching is a method called crimping or crowding.

Crown
• Crown is an ornate headpiece worn by royalty as a sign of sovereignty. It sits high on top of the head encircling or partially encircling the top of the head with ornate beads, jewels, fabric, or lace much like a Tiara. It is also a term describing the top of a hat.

Crown-Jewelry
• Crown-Jewelry is a jewelry term describing the portion of gemstones above its setting foundation or girdle.

Crown-Veil or Headpiece
• Crown-Veil or Headpiece is a headpiece that sits high on top of the head encircling or partially encircling the top of the head with ornate beads, jewels, fabric, or lace much like a Tiara. (Also known simply as Crown)

Crumbcloth
• Crumbcloth is a large cloth laid under a table to catch falling crumbs from messy eaters. A Tablecloth lies on top of the table, while the crumbcloth lies beneath the table.

Crushed Velvet
• Crushed Velvet is velvet fabric designed to produce an irregular nap giving the uneven multi-directional appearance of somewhat wrinkled surface.

Crystalina Plastisol
• Crystaline Plastisol is a finishing process wherein fabric is printed with multiple colors.

C-thru Plastic Ruler
• C-thru plastic ruler is a special quilting or sewing ruler usually made of acrylic and used for measuring and cutting. The come
in a variety of tints, sizes, and with a variety of measuring grid systems.

**Cuff**
- Cuff is the end of a shirt sleeve where the garment is hemmed. There are a variety of different styles of cuffs used in men's and women's garments.

**Cuisse**
- Cuisse is a piece of armor covering the upper leg.

**Culet**
- Culet is a jewelry term referring to the bottom of a gemstone. Culet is also a medieval piece of armor covering the butt.

**Culotte**
- Culotte is a skirt pant or pants that are divided with floppy skirt styled legs such that it looks like a skirt and wears like pants.

**Cummerbund**
- Cummerbund is a garment accessory worn around the waist commonly as part of a man's formal tuxedo and adapted for various women's styles.

**Cup**
- Cup is a devise to hold in a protective or supportive manner a part of the body ie. Athletic supporter cup for men or a bra cup for a woman.

**Cuprammonium**
- Cuprammonium is a production process where wood pulp or cotton are dissolved in ammoniac copper oxide solution to form a regenerated rayon fiber such as Bemberg Rayon.

**Curch**
- Curch is neckerchief worn in Scotland.

**Curiass**
- Curiass is a breastplate or piece of armor worn by knights to protect the body above the waist.
Curtain
• Curtain is a window treatment usually consisting of a single layer of cloth and commonly used in kitchens, bathrooms, and bedrooms.

Curtain Drop
• Curtain Drop is how the window treatment fabric drapes, falls, or hangs from top to bottom.

Curved Needle
• Curved Needle is a needle that is curved or looks like part of a circle. Curved Needles are common for hand sewing, but are also used on numerous industrial and commercial sewing machines such as the typical blind hemmer.

Curved Piecing
• Curved Piecing or making a Drunkard's Path Block is achieved by sewing a fabric block with a convex shaped edge to a concave shaped seam.

Curved Seam
• Curved Seam is a line of stitching that is actually curved instead of straight. When machine sewing a curved seam, feed the fabric with a gentle tug away from the needle guiding it carefully around the curve.

Curves
• Curves are continuously bending lines that do not have jagged angles such as tracing the perimeter of a circle or oval shape.

Customer
• Customer is a person who purchases products from a seller.

Customer Return
• Customer Return is product that has been purchased by a consumer at a retail level and brings the product back to the merchant or seller for his return of his purchase price. There are many reasons why a customer may return a product to a retailer, but it is the discretion of the retailer whether or not to give the purchase price back to the purchaser. Generally, if the item is returned within one to three days, the retailer will
reimburse the purchaser. If the return comes after an extended period of time the retailer may reject the return or charge a restocking fee if the product is in salable condition. Occasionally, the product is broken or damaged in some way. If the customer can prove that it was that way when purchased, the retailer will accept the loss and the return. If it appears the customer damaged the product, the retailer will usually not accept the return. Often retailers will post signs, "You Break It, You Buy It."

**Customs**
- Customs is a term describing the taxing agencies which assess taxes on imports and exports.

**Custom Design**
- Custom Design is an embroidery design produced by digitizing clip art, scanned art, or other artwork or editing an existing design.

**Customs Broker**
- Customs Broker are professional who work with the U.S. Customs and Border Protection Agency to assist importers and exporters with processing their goods through customs.

**Cut Away Interfacing**
- Cut Away Interfacing is fabric or interfacing that is cut and removed from the project once finish sewing is completed.

**Cut Velvet**
- Cut Velvet is fabric with looped pile that has been cut or trimmed away to produce a special cut pile finish.

**Cutaway**
- Cutaway is a long coat with tails tapered from the waist.

**Cutoff**
- Cutoff or cutoffs are shorts made by cutting slacks off at or above the knees especially popular with blue jeans.

**Cut-pile Fabric**
• Cut-pile Fabric is a fabric or material that has small loops of thread all across its surface forming a nap, but these loops have been cut or trimmed away producing the cut pile finish as in Cut Velvet.

Cutting Board
• A cutting board is a special wooden or similar composite material used as a base for cutting. Commonly rotary cutters work best with self healing cutting mats, but could be used on a cutting board.

Cutting Lines
• Patterns have a line indicated where the fabric should be cut. This line is transferred to the fabric for cutting. This line is the cutting line.

Cutting Mat
• A cutting mat is used as a foundation for a rotary cutter to cut fabric and patterns. There are two types: standard and self healing mats. Self healing mats are preferred because they can be used repeatedly without permanent scoring.

Cutting Table
• A cutting table is a table used for cutting out fabric and patterns. There are many different sizes and designs. In the retail store, you may see an eight or twelve foot by four foot cutting table that allows cutting large quantities of fabric and may even accommodate multiple cutters at the same time. Home cutting tables are frequently, portable. Several sewing cabinets have special fold up leaves that serve as cutting tables.

Cutty Sark
• Cutty Sark is a woman's undergarment.

Cutwork
• Cutwork is a technique involving trimming out the top fabric to expose a background fabric, embroidery where part of the fabric is cut away, or ornamental needlework where one layer of fabric is trimmed away while another ornamental piece is set into the opening.

Cyan
• Cyan is the color greenish blue.

TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Dacron
• Dacron™ is a DuPont silky polyester fabric often cut on grainline and used for comfortable dresses.

Daisy/Star
• Daisy /Star is a quilt block design.

Damask
• Damask is a jacquard finish made from blends, cotton, linen, rayon, or silk that has a flat reversible pattern. Damask is often used in draperies, napkins, tablecloths, and upholstery.

Dark Colors
• Dark colors are those colors that absorb more of the light or color spectrum than others such as black, brown, dark blue, and dark green.

Darn
• Holes happen. Darning is stitching to fix those holes. Repairing socks is a common application of darning. Many upper end sewing machines come with special darning stitches or attachments.

Darners or Darning Needles
• To baste or darn by hand with cotton or other thread, special long needles called darners or darning needles are used.

Darning Presserfoot
• Free motion quilting, stippling, and free motion embroidery depend on the ability of the quilter to freely move the fabric. The darning foot is a sewing machine presser foot that hold the fabric down only when the needle is coming up. Therefore, the
sewer can freely move the fabric while the machine sews.

Dart
- Creating contour in a garment doesn't just happen automatically. Amazingly, a technique known as the dart achieves this beautifully. The dart is a tapered tuck in the fabric sewn in to provide shaping. The tuck is usually a V-shaped seam that gradually narrows to its apex or point. Darts are very common in blouses, jackets, and skirts providing contour around breast, waistline, and hip.

Dart Equivalents
- Dart Equivalents are substitutes for darts in garments including Princess lines and gatherings.

Dashiki
- Dashiki is an African bold print cotton shirt similar to a kimono without a collar.

Décolletage
- Décolletage is a style of neckline characterized by deep, plunging, revealing neckline that shows a lot of cleavage.

Decorative Stitches
- Decorative Stitches is a descriptive term referring to the hundreds of stitches designed for ornamental use. These stitches include old style satin stitches of a wide range of shapes and sizes, plus modern motif stitches, as well as the many pretty stitches available on most modern machines.

Deerskin
- Deerskin is, soft and supple, processed deer leather used for expensive shirts, and other garments.

Demarcation Line
- This phrase is used widely to describe various dividing lines (where one part and ends and another begins) in patterns, layout, and measurement. For example, to fit a dress measurements are taken of a woman's ribcage. Specifically, just under the breast at the "infra-mammary crease line" is measured along what is called the line of demarcation between
the chest and breast. Cut lines are sometimes referred to as lines of demarcation such as those needed to fit garments with neck, armholes, and sleeve panels. This term is also used to describe the point where major changes are made as in changing a pattern from its original design to something different.

**Denier**
- Denier is a system of measurement applied to all manufactured fibers (excluding glass). A denier is equal to the weight of 9,000 meters of continuous filament fibers. The lower the denier number means the finer the fiber. The higher the number the heavier the fiber.

**Denim**
- Denim is a very popular cotton fabric famous for its durability. Today denim is used in all manner of workwear, sports wear, and recreational wear. A pair of designer fashion jeans may cost up to $800.

**Denim Needle**
- The denim needle is a specialty needle (usually a 14 or 16) designed to be stronger and sharper than a standard needle. It is designed to sew on denim.

**Dental Floss**
- Dental Floss is a strong thin thread like material originally used to clean between your teeth. Some floss is waxed and some is plain. It is often used to create gathers by sewing over it with a zig zag stitch. It is also sometimes used as thread to sew on buttons. Do not use dental floss in your sewing machine especially if it is waxed.

**Derby**
- A Derby is a man’s hat boasting a rounded crown and brim.

**Design Ease**
- Design Ease is a term that relates to the tightness of fit -
Design Quilting

- When a quilt top is finished and the quilt is ready to be finished, the quilt may be finish quilted by sewing with a long arm quilting machine. When this is done, it is common to use pre designed templates and quilting according to these designs (Hence, Design Quilting). There are many different designs for finish quilting including elaborate shapes and simple loops. Also, many quilt blocks are made today using embroidery designs on their embroidery machines. These designs are often quite ornate and elaborate.

Design Software

- Design Software is a program used to control the sewing of embroidery or other designs by machine. Some of the more popular home embroidery design software include: Artista 5.0; Palette 7.0; Master Works; PE Design, etc. Commercial software is also available, but much more expensive.

Detachable Train

- Detachable Train is a fabric trailing treatment that may be attached (by buttons, snaps, or other fasteners) to the back of a gown or removed for less formal activities.

Diagonal Basting

- Diagonal Basting is a method of temporarily attaching a quilt top (to the batting and backing) in an X, corner to corner, or diagonal to hold it in place prior to finish sewing.

Diagonal Basting Stitch

- A series of temporary stitches fastening fabrics together and running diagonally or at forty five degrees across the grain prior to sewing a finished seam is called a diagonal basting stitch.

Diagonal Set

- Diagonal Set is a quilt making technique utilizing multiple right triangles usually produced using a special Diagonal Set Ruler.

Diamond Neck

- A Diamond Neck is a garment piece cutout that fastens at the front or back of the neckline in the shape of a diamond.
Differential Feed
• Differential Feed is second set of feed dogs that works independently of the primary feed dogs to improve the consistency of fabric flow through the serger.

Digitizing
• Digitizing is the process of taking artwork or graphic files (.jpg, tiff, Bmp, etc.) and applying digital processes to create stitch files (.art, .pes, .jif, etc.).

Direct Cost
• Direct Cost is a term related to the cost of manufacturing.

Directional Borders
• Fabric used for borders sometimes uses directional fabrics which cause the border then to flow directionally.

Directional Fabric
• Printed fabrics often have prints that run is a set direction. These fabrics with the print running vertically, horizontally, or diagonally are called directional fabrics or directional prints.

Directional Stitching
• Sewing so that the stitch lines run with the grainline or (as in knits) in one direction.

Disappearing Link Marking Pen
• An air soluble marking pen is very helpful for marking fabric because it disappears in a short time.

Dispersion
• Dispersion is a jewelry term referring to the colored reflections of or fire of a diamond or gemstone.

Dobby
• Dobby is a fabric or a garment made of the fabric characterized by small designs woven into the fabric.

Doeskin
• Doeskin is a finish type with low unidirectional nap. It is a soft
suede like hand on the fabric. Doeskin is often used for pool tables and sportswear.

**Dog Collar**
- Dog Collar is a belt worn around the neck of pets such as dogs.

**Dolman Sleeve**
- A Dolman Sleeve is a sleeve designed without a shoulder socket. It has a batwing appearance from the waist to a narrow wrist. The sleeve is full at the shoulder but tapers gently to a snug fit at the wrist.

**Domestics**
- Domestics is a term that describes items for the home such as sheets, towels, and linens.

**Domino**
- Domino is a hooded costume cloak often worn with a mask.

**Dommet Flannel**
- Dommet Flannel is a plain woven fabric with soft fill threads for a gentle thick nap great for infant wear and polishing cloths.

**Donegal Tweeds**
- Donegal tweeds are wool fabrics characterized by coarse, wrinkle free, multicolored fabric often used in men's jackets.

**Dongle**
- Many software programs use special security devices that attach to the computer and safeguard copyright and security. These devices are called dongles.

**Donkey Jacket**
- Donkey Jacket is a work jacket common in England.

**Do-Sew**
- Do-Sew is a type of pattern paper used to trace or make patterns.

**Dotted Swiss**
• Dotted Swiss is lacy material made on a chiffon or fine net foundation with small dots or circles in the fabric. Summer blouses and kitchen curtains are often made with dotted swiss an amazing sheer cotton or nylon fabric with small thread dots woven or glued on.

**Double Breasted**
• Double Breasted refers to a style of jacket with two rows of buttons, a single showing row of buttonholes and a hidden row of buttonholes. One lapel overlaps the other.

**Double Cloth**
• Double Cloth is a technique where two fabrics are woven on the same loom at the same time on top of each other.

**Double Face Satin**
• Double Face Satin is woven fabric with two satin finished sides.

**Double Knit**
• Double Knit is a fabric produced using two layers of loops locked together by a special twin needle knitting machine.

**Double Needle**
• The regular sewing stitch is formed by wrapping the upper thread coming through the eye of a needle and the lower thread coming up from the bobbin. An interesting enhancement to the usual single line of thread forming the line of stitches with a specialty needle known as the double needle. The double needle has a common shank on top that attaches to a crosswise piece. The upper shaft of the needle slides up into the needle clamp just like a regular sewing needle. Attached below this cross piece are two needles just like the normal tips of any regular needle with scarf, eye, and point. One upper thread is threaded through the right needle and a second upper thread is threaded through the left needle. Stitches are then formed in the usual way wrapping with the bobbin thread, but the result are two perfectly parallel rows of stitches.

**Double Needle Hem**
• Double Needle Hem is a hem sewn by folding over the edge of the fabric and top stitching with a twin or double needle.
**Double Nine Patch**
- Double Nine Patch is a quilt pattern which is built off the traditional nine patch design consisting of three blocks across and three blocks down. Multiples of this basic design are then described as double or triple. A double is two times the three patches or blocks or six patches or blocks across and six down.

**Double Tee Top**
- A Double Tee Top is a style of tee shirt involving layered one T-shirt over another.

**Double Weave**
- Double Weave is a technique of interlacing two or more sets of yarns.

**Double Wedding Ring Design**
- Double Wedding Ring Design is a quilt design in which overlapping circles or rings form an ornate double wedding ring across the quilt top.

**Double Breasted Jacket**
- A Double Breasted Jacket is a suit jacket which has one lapel and front that overlaps the other usually with buttons lined on both sides of the overlap.

**Double-face Satin**
- Double-face Satin is a fabric with satin finish on both sides. It is made by weaving two warps and one filling yarn. Cotton is used as filling for less expensive qualities.

**Double-Fold Bias Tape**
- Double-Fold Bias Tape is bias tape (continuous strip of diagonally cut fabric) that is folded in from both edges of the tape and then folded together.
Double-Layer Sleeve Heads
- Double-Layer Sleeve Heads is two pieces of stiff lining fabric set in the top of the sleeve where it attaches to the shoulder to make the sleeve lay nicely or if gathered make the sleeve puffy.

Doublesided Tape
- Double Sided Tape is tape that is sticky on both sides so that it hold two pieces of material together.

Doublestick Tape
- Doublestick Tape is a double sided tape if ironed it becomes permanent. Steam a Seam II

Double-Stitched Seam
- Double-Stitched Seam is a row of stitches that is reinforced with a second row of stitches or sewn decoratively with a twin needle.

Doublet
- Doublet is a tight fitting jacket with buttons worn during the Middle Ages.

Double-Topstitched Seam
- Double-Topstitched Seam is a seam that has two rows of stitches showing on the top of the fabric whether sewn with a twin needle or simply two lines of regular stitches.

Doupion or Douppioni
- Doupion is an irregular silk knit fabric with thick spots and less thick area due to the use of silk from double silk worms.

Dowel or Wooden Dowel
- Dowel or Wooden Dowel or Dowel Rod is a long rounded piece of wood in varying diameter sizes 1/8", 1/4", 1/2", 3/4", 1", and larger usually sold in 3', 4', or 8' lengths.

Down Pillow Stuffing
- Down Pillow Stuffing is fill material made of goose down or similar feathers used to fill pillows.

Drab
- Drab is the color light olive brown.

**Drafted Pattern**
- Draw, trace, or outline features or parts of a garment or quilt block or other project on graph paper or pattern paper. This technique of developing a pattern is called a drafted pattern.

**Drafting Compass**
- A drafting compass is an essential tool used to draw and measure shapes, angles, and features of a project during the pattern drafting process.

**Drafting Paper**
- A special paper is used to create patterns for sewing known as drafting paper.

**Drafting Tape**
- Drafting Tape is a disposable tape with measured markings 1/4" apart (usually white with black markings) used to mark the location of stitches for hand sewing and similar projects. A version of drafting tape is the Quilter's Quarter Inch Tape.

**Drape**
- The way fabric hangs is called the drape of the fabric. When fabric is used as window coverings they are called drapes. A formal gown drapes over the body.

**Draped Bodice**
- A Draped Bodice is a style involving an additional piece of material over the bustline.

**Drapery Cord**
- Drapery cord is small rope used to control the positioning of the window treatments or draperies.

**Draping**
- Draping is a pattern making technique that involves use of muslin to create a trial dress form pattern.

**Drawcord**
• Drawcord is small rope used to control draperies.

**Drawn Threadwork**
• Drawn Threadwork is an heirloom technique where a set of threads (grain or crossgrain) in the middle of fabric is removed leaving a netting like finish.

**Dreadnought**
• Dreadnought is a thick cloth or a garment made from the cloth.

**Dress**
• Dress is a one piece garment including a shirt like blouse connected to a skirt.

**Dress Shield**
• Dress Shield is an undergarment used to keep perspiration away from the dress.

**Dress Shirt**
• Dress Shirt is a man's formal shirt usually worn with a suit and necktie.

**Dress Uniform**
• Dress Uniform is a clothing outfit worn by military personnel, or other groups with special distinctions.

**Dressing Gown**
• Dressing Gown is a lounging robe.

**Dressmaker Clapper**
• Dressmaker Clapper is a wooden pressing tool used with steam to pound fabrics (most commonly heavy wools).

**Dressmaker Pins**
• Dressmaker Pins are pins (recommended are glass head pins) used to layout patterns and hold fabrics together in pin basting.

**Dressmaker's Carbon Paper**
• Tracing paper and other carbonless transfer papers are useful to copy patterns before adjusting and sewing out their projects.
Dressmaker's Chalk
- Dressmaker's Chalk is chalk used to mark fabrics. It is usually a small rectangular chalk held by a plastic holder. It also comes in a convenient chalk pencil.

Dressmaker's Gauge
- Dressmaker's Gauge is also known as a hem gauge. It is a metal six inch ruler with a plastic center slide used to mark and guide the sewing of hems.

Dress Silhouette
- Dress Silhouette is the overall image of a dress which involves waistline and bodice and which may be described in various ways and styles including: A-Line, Ball Gown, Empire Waist, Princess Waist, Sheath, Antebellum, Asymmetrical, Basque, Bustier, Drop Waist, Eyelet, Raised Waistline, and Strapless.

Drill
- Drill is a tough strong dense twill cotton like denim that is used for uniforms, lining shoes, and work clothing.

Drill Holes
- Drill Holes are the holes made in patterns to indicate locations on ends of darts, tucks, and pocket placement.

Drip-Dry
- Drip-Dry is a ready to wear garment that is dried by hanging on a clothes line to drip dry.

Drop
- The distance or length of a finished drapery, curtain, or other similar window dressing measured from the top down to the bottom is known as the drop. Curtains and draperies are usually hung on poles, traverse rods, or various bracket devises to hold them up. Drop is measured from the highest fabric point whether the drapery sticks up a few inches above its rod or merely hanging down from its pole. When constructing window dressings it is crucial that the drop anticipate how the drapery will hang on its rod as well as how much clearance is needed below the drapery above the floor.
Drop Needle
- Drop Needle is a knit fabric produced by "dropping" a needle from the knitting cylinder.

Drop Stitch
- Drop Stitch is a design feature used on ribbed fabrics, knit shirts, and dress fabrics.

Dropped Shoulders
- A Dropped Shoulder is a style in which the sleeve seam falls off the shoulder.

Dropped Waist
- A Dropped Waist or Low Waist is a waistline sewn below the natural waist.

Drugget
- Drugget is a type of woven fabric.

Dry Suit
- Dry Suit is a snug fitting diver's waterproof garment.

Dual Tracing Wheel
- Dual Tracing Wheel is a marking tracing tool with two parallel wheels with Serrated edges used for tracing patterns onto fabric using dressmaking tracing paper.

Duchesse Satin
- The name duchesse satin conjures up images of elegance and royalty descriptive of this fine, lustrous, smooth silk used for bridal and formal wear.

Duck
- Ducks fly in the wind and float on the water, and Duck fabric is great for awnings, sails, and tents because of its durable and flexible cotton weave.
Duck Tape Double (DTD)
• Using duct tape, the body or form is wrapped until the tape conforms to the contours of the form. This wrapping is removed all at once as a molded duplicate of the wrapped form.

Duffel Coat
• Duffel Coat is a hooded winter coat.

Dun
• Dun is the color brownish gray.

Dunce Cap
• Dunce Cap is a cone shaped cap worn by students being punished for misbehavior.

Dungaree
• Dungaree are blue denim garments.

Dunkard's Path
• The Dunkard's Path is a quilt block that became popular during the Temperance movement. Many of these quilts were pieced with blue and white fabrics representing the Temperance movement.

Dupioni
• Dupioni is a 100% woven silk fabric with varying thickness producing a rough finish that often tends to wrinkle also called Indian Dupion. Dupion, Dupioni, Dupionis.

Durability
• The character of fabric resists wear through continual use.

Durable Press
• Durable Press is a treatment applied to fabric during finishing to maintain a smooth attractive appearance, resist wrinkles, and retain creases or pleats.

Duster
• Duster is a lightweight coat used to protect clothing against dust.
**Duvet**
- Duvet is a day bed or piece of relaxation furniture.

**Duvet Cover**
- Duvet Cover is a large pillow case or envelope used to hold a puffy blanket or duvet.

**Duvetyne**
- Duvetyne is is a soft good, draping, close weave, quality wool similar to cotton suede.

**Dye Magnet**
- Dye Magnet is a device used to attract loose dyes in wash water. Woolite® is a popular brand of Dye Magnet, but you can make your own by attaching an ordinary terry cloth washcloth to a small piece of cork and plot it into the wash water. The washcloth will float collecting loose dye from the top of the wash water.

**Dyeing**
- Dyeing is the process of chemically adding color to a fabric. Hand dyed fabric is soaked in a dye mixture by hand, while most dyed fabrics are dyed in large manufacturing vats.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

**Earflap**
- Earflap is an accessory to keep ears warm. Earflaps are built into caps.

**Earmuff**
- Earmuffs are warm ear coverings.

**Earth Tone**
- Earth Tone is a term describing colors containing brown.

**Earthy**
- Earthy is a descriptive term referencing browns in color or earthy textures.

**Ease**
- Ease is a term that describes the squeezing or allowance needed to fit fabrics of different sizes, shapes, or contours together for proper fit. A longer piece of fabric is said to be eased to fit a shorter piece. The cap of a sleeve is eased into the armhole to form a proper fitting sleeve. Ease is simply fitting two fabrics that are different in some way together so that the fit properly. Commonly, a hem may be sewn with a slightly shorter fabric held tightly (maybe even stretched) a bit on the bottom and a larger piece eased more loosely on top. When elastic is attached at a waistline, it is stretched and sewn onto the less stretchy fabric. The term ease also refers to the difference between the actual measurements of the body and the measurement of a garment. Ease, in this case, refers to the allowance - tightness or looseness - of the garment

**Ease Basting**
- Basting is temporarily fastening fabrics together in preparation for seaming or sewing. Ease basting includes anticipation of easing larger and smaller fabrics. Thus we have ease basting.

**Ease Plus**
• Adding additional fabric measurement to the standard measurement plus the ease allowance is called Ease Plus. If one half inch is usual ease measurement and you add an additional inch to the measurement, it is called Ease Plus.

**Eased Seam**
- Eased Seam is sewing two different sized pieces of fabric together without gathering. The larger pieces is said to be eased into the smaller and the line of stitches is called an eased seam.

**Easestitch**
- Easestitch is a stitch used to join pieces of different sized fabrics together without gatherings.

**Ebon or Ebony**
- Ebony is black or dark color.

**Echo Quilting**
- Hawaiian style quilting uses quarter inch repetitive stitching around applique or pieced work creating what is known as echo quilting.

**Edge to Edge Linings**
- Edge to Edge Linings are linings of a garment that are sewn together with the finished garment and the lining is sewn into the finished seams.

**Edgestitch**
- On many garments a line of stitches is sewn around the outer border (1/16th inch) no more than 1/8th inch from the edge. This is common around pockets and along a turned edge. This line of straight stitching is called an edgestitch.

**Edgestitched Seam**
- Edgestitched Seam is an heirloom sewing technique to edgestitch or finish the edge of one fabric and seaming (sewing) two pieces of fabric together.

**Edgestitching Foot**
- This is a topstitching presser foot for sewing close to the seam
Editor Lite
- Editor Lite is an entry level design software (version of Artista Software) marketed through Bernina®.

Eggplant
- Eggplant is a dark gray or black purple color.

Eggshell
- Eggshell is a yellow white color.

Egyptian Cotton
- Egyptian cotton makes the finest sheets and shirting with its high quality long fiber cotton fabric.

Eiderdown
- Eiderdown is a soft lightweight fabric.

Elastic
- Elastic is a stretch fiber containing rubber which may be made into thread, fabric, or waistbands.

Elastic Casing
- Elastic Casing is a folded over fabric cover for elastic. The Elastic Casing of an Elastic Waistband is made by folding over the fabric and stitching it down with the elastic waistband encased.

Elastic Drawcord
- Elastic Drawcord is a stretchy piece of elastic cording used to draw up an opening such as a bag or pants with the cord encased in fabric and tied in the front.

Elastic Lingerie
- Elastic Lingerie is any stretchy undergarment such as a girdle. Lingerie Elastic is a super stretchy elastic used in sewing lingerie garments.

Elastic Thread
- Elastic is an amazing invention. It not only stretches; it
bounces back. Elastic thread is very fine elastic formed and used like regular thread, however, once sewing is complete the seam enjoys the special benefit of the stretching and bouncing back qualities of the elastic thread.

**Elastic Waistbands**
- Elastic Waistband is a strip of stretchy material usually encased to make waistbands.

**Elasticity**
- Elasticity is the ability of a fiber to bounce back to its original length, shape, or size after stretching.

**Elbow Veil**
- Elbow Veil is a veil usually a little more than two feet long that reaches to the elbow.

**Electric Scissors**
- Electric Scissors are scissors with electric motors for faster easier cutting of fabric.

**Electric Quilt**
- Electric Quilt is quilt design software which enables a quilter to design a quilt on a computer prior to cutting and sewing fabrics for the quilt.

**Electronic Foot Control**
- Electronic Foot Control is a devise to control the speed of an electronic sewing machine. The electronic foot control gives improved control over the motor allowing the sewing machine to sew with more torque and effectiveness.

**Electronic Sewing Machine**
- Electronic Sewing Machine is a sewing machine that is controlled by electronics to operate the motor and other aspects of the machine.

**Elizabethan Collar/Neckline**
- Elizabethan Collar/Neckline is a style of neckline characterized by a high removable collar which may flare outward and reach higher in the back while sloping more narrowly in the front.
**Elna**
- Elna® is a sewing machine brand originally owned and manufactured in Italy, but today is owned and marketed by the Japanese sewing machine manufacturer Janome.

**Embellish**
- To Embellish a garment is to add design features to the garment such as applique, charms, decoration, or special decorative stitching.

**Emblem**
- Emblem is self contained, finished edged, embroidery design to be sewn onto a garment.

**Embossing**
- Embossing is a process in which fabric is engraved with the use of pressurized heated rollers to produce a raised design on the fabric surface.

**Embroidery**
- Embroidery is a technique to embellish fabric using decorative threads.

**Embroidery Designs**
- Embroidery Designs are like blueprints for the production of stitched embroidery. Graphic images are processed through design software to produce stitch files which are sewn out by a computerized embroidery machine. Templates are usually used for hand embroidery.

**Embroidery Floss**
- Embroidery Floss is thread used for hand embroidery.
Embroidery Machine
- Embroidery Machine is a computerized sewing machine capable of reading stitch files and stitching them out.

Embroidery Needle
- Embroidery Needle is a special needle used either for hand embroidery or machine embroidery. Machine embroidery needles are often designed with slightly larger eyes and scarfs for consistent stitching at high speeds, and special metal alloys are often used to produce longer lasting embroidery needles (Such as Titanium Needles.)

Embroidery Scissors
- Embroidery Scissors are scissors designed for the delicate work of removing jump stitches from embroidery and trimming fine detailed work.

Embroidery Software
- Embroidery Software is a program to digitizes, edit, and develop stitch files for computerized embroidery. Some of the more popular home embroidery design software includes Designer' Gallery Master Works, Artista, Palette, and PE Design.

Emerald
- Emerald is a bright green.

Emerald Green
- Emerald Green is a strong green.

Emery Bag
- When rust begins to tarnish needles, it is best to replace the needle with a new one, but rubbing it against the emery bag will help remove the rust. Do not leave needles in contact with emery for any length of time, because the emery can damage the needle finish when overexposed.

Empire Bodice
- An Empire Bodice is characterized by the bodice ending just below the bustline sometimes made with low cut or gathered neckline and falls to a slimming fluid skirt.
Empire Seams
- An Empire Seam is a seam sewn directly below the bustline.

Empire Waist
- An Empire Waist is a waistline that starts just below the bustline.

Enclosed Seam
- When seams are finished and the edges are hidden between the facing and fashion fabric it is called enclosing the seam. (Enclosed seam)

Endfold
- Endfold finishing has characteristics that make good labels.

English Cotton
- English Cotton is cotton produced in Great Britain.

English Net
- English net is a delicate easily dyed woven net fabric used for sheer evening wear, and sleeves, trains, and other parts of formal gowns.

English Paper Piecing
- Fabric pieces are basted over paper patterns or templates and then whipstitched (handsewn or handstitched) along the fabric edges in a hand piecing method known as English Paper Piecing.

Engraved Invitations
- Engraved Invitations are special announcements employing the special techniques of Engraving that gives a very crisp raised effect.

Entredeau
- Entredeux is the joining of two lightweight fabrics or ribbons with a
piece of lace between. The term comes from French meaning "between two".

**Envelope Style Finish**
- How do you quilt an Envelope Finish Quilt? Lay the quilt batting flat. Lay the backing right side up over the backing. Finally, lay the quilt top right side down over the backing (right sides together). Seam around three sides and half of the fourth. Turn the quilt inside out with quilt top and backing right sides out. Hand stitch to close the envelope. This technique is called the Envelope Style Finish.

**Epaulet**
- Epaulet is ornamental fringe or decoration on the shoulder.

**Ephod**
- Ephod is a linen apron derived from Hebrew tradition and the High Priest's vestments.

**Eponge**
- Eponge (souffle or boucle or ratine) is a spongy fabric like the wool, rayon, silk, and cotton.

**Espadrille**
- Espadrille is a shoe made with fabric uppers and flexible sole.

**Eton Collar**
- Eton Collars are large stiff collars.

**European sham**
- A sham is a pillow cover. The special characteristic of the European sham is its flat border normally about two inches around the entire pillow.

**Even Basting**
- Even Basting is a hand stitching technique used to fasten layers of fabric together for final sewing being careful to use shorter and more consistent stitches than uneven stitching.

**Even Plaid**
- Even Plaid is the balance of horizontal and vertical stripes.
Even-Feed System
- Even-Feed System is a sewing machine system that guides the fabric through it from top and bottom by use of a Walking Foot.

Even-Feed Foot
- Even Feed Foot achieves pull on fabric from top and bottom through use of a Walking Foot.

Evening Clutches
- Evening Clutches are small purses used to accessorize evening wear usually without a handle or strap.

Evening Wear
- Evening Wear is clothing designed to be worn at night.

Evenweave
- Evenweave is a term that indicates the fabric is composed of the same number of threads in the grain and crossgrain. Example: Aida Cloth or Canvas

Eye
- The hole in a needle through which the thread passes is called the eye of the needle.

Eye-Clean
- Eye-Clean refers to gems that have no obvious flaws, blemishes, or inclusions when seen by the naked eye.

Eyelet
- Eyelet is a fabric with holes cut out of it in an all over pattern around which stitching is applied to prevent fabric from raveling.

Eyelet Pliers
- Eyelet Pliers are special pliers used to fasten grommets into eyelets.

Eyelets
- Eyelets are small holes or perforations (finishes with metal, cord, fabric, threads, or leather. They come in varying sizes from eyelet cloth with small holes all over the fabric, to delicate embroidered eyelets used for ornamentation and illusion, to eyelets that are used
primarily for fastening the fabric (canvas, vinyl, or other heavy fabric) with cords. Larger eyelets are often finished with special grommets or circular pieces of metal to provide a sturdy means of fastening.

**Eyeshade**
- Eyeshade is a cloth attachment to a cap that shades the eyes - Visor.

**Eye Spy Quilt**
- Eye Spy Quilt is a quilt which uses various techniques including fussy cut novelty print pieces to create fun and stimulating children's quilt blocks in various shapes (hexagon, triangle, square).
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

**Fabric**
- Fabric is a flexible material made for purposes of making clothing, covering furniture, etc. from natural and synthetic (man made) fibers. These fibers are made into threads, yarn, and fabric through weaving, knitting, and chemical and pressure based manufacturing processes.

**Fabric – Knit**
- Knit Fabrics are fabrics that are knitted instead of woven, and they come in many different styles, prints, and combinations. One of the more distinct features of knit fabrics is that they tend to stretch and give more than woven fabrics.

**Fabric – Nap**
- Nap is a term applied to fabrics whose surface is fuzzy or hairy. These fabrics are commonly processed so that the fuzziness flows in a given direction giving a delightful texture to the fabric. Move your hand over the fabric in one way and the fabric may look smooth. Move it another and it may appear to have thousands of little threads standing up. This nap also affects the reflection of light revealing a glistening on one direction and a more dull or darker look the other.

**Fabric – Pelt**
- Fabric - Pelt is an animal skin that is used for cloth or a fabric that simulates the natural animal skin.

**Fabric – Pile**
- Fabric - Pile is the surface of a fabric which has treads that appear hairy, soft, woolly, furry or otherwise has yarns or threads that appear to stand up off the foundation of the fabric. Pile may be cut or loop like in corduroy, velvet, or terry cloth.

**Fabric Diagonals**
- Some fabrics are printed on the bias or diagonal of the fabric. When selecting a pattern and laying it out, be sure to check for cautions
such as "Not suitable for Diagonal Fabrics".

**Fabric Glue**
- Fabric glue is glue for use on fabrics. Some is used for basting. Some is wash out glue. Some is permanent. Consider the following brands of fabric glue: Stikit Again & Again™ Glue, Plexi® 400 Stretch Adhesive, Liquid Pins, Liqui Fuse™, Liquid Fusible Web™. Plexi(R) 400 Stretch Adhesive offer the added benefit of fabric glue that remains flexible permanently.

**Fabric Hand**
- One of the great pleasures of working with fabrics is their feel. The way the fabric flows and drapes; and the fabrics' texture are what we call fabric hand.

**Fabric Marker**
- There are many different brands and types of pens or markers used to make on fabric. Some are permanent markers. Some are erasable, wash away (disolvable in water) or air disolvable markers. Check out Mark*Be*Gone™, Pigma Micron Permanent Pen, Pen Touch Pen, Quilter's Clean Erase™ Marking Pen, and others.

**Fabric Repeat**
- Fabric Repeat is the distance or measure of the design in a fabric from the beginning of the design to the point at which it begins again (repeats). A Fabric Repeat may be every twelve inches or twenty four inches or some other distance.

**Fabric Scissors**
- Scissors are a vital tool for dressmaker and other sewers. Larger scissors are called shears. It is crucial that scissors used on fabric be reserved for use with fabric only. Even the smallest knick on the blade of scissors can snag fabric, and dull scissors do a poor job. Sewing or fabric scissors should be used only on fabric. Popular brands include Ginger(R) and Fiscars (R) and Mundial (R)

**Fabric Stash**
- "The one who dies with the most fabric wins." Virtually, everyone who sews or quilts has a collection of fabrics just waiting or the right time and project. This collection is fondly referred to as the Fabric Stash.
**Fabrication**
- Fabrication is the process of manufacturing or producing fabrics or their selection for use in making a project.

**Face**
- The front of the fabric (right side showing) is called the face of the garment, but installing interfacing in a garment is also called facing. It is also called the right side of the fabric.

**Face Seam**
- Face Seam is a line of stitches to be seen on the front or outside of a garment. It may include simple topstitching or a variety of decorative stitches.

**Faced Buttonholes**
- Faced Buttonholes, Faced Method, Faced Method for Buttonholes, and Bound Button Holes are all the same thing and refer to buttonholes in which a layer of fabric is inserted, sewn, cut, folded under, and faced to give the buttonhole maximum strength. See SewingAnswer.Com for details on how to sew a Bound Button Hole.

**Faced Method**
- Faced Buttonholes, Faced Method, Faced Method for Buttonholes, and Bound Button Holes are all the same thing and refer to buttonholes in which a layer of fabric is inserted, sewn, cut, folded under, and faced to give the buttonhole maximum strength. See SewingAnswer.Com for details on how to sew a Bound Button Hole.

**Faced Method for Buttonholes**
- Faced Buttonholes, Faced Method, Faced Method for Buttonholes, and Bound Button Holes are all the same thing and refer to buttonholes in which a layer of fabric is inserted, sewn, cut, folded under, and faced to give the buttonhole maximum strength. See SewingAnswer.Com for details on how to sew a Bound Button Hole.

**Facet**
- Facet refers to flat polished or cut surfaces on gemstones.

**Facile**
- Skinner Company has developed this FacileTM faux suede that drapes better than Ultrasuede and is very lightweight.
Facing
- Facing is fabric that is sewn on to a fabric raw edge. The facing is turned under to form an envelope finish for the edge. Facing is fabric or material placed on top of hooped fabric to keep the surface from meshing down during embroidering. Also known as stabilizer or topping.

Faconne
- Faconne is a fabric made of silk or rayon with a "burnt-out" finish. In French, Faconne means fancy weave. The fabric is characterized by all over designs, lightweight, and may be slightly creped.

Fading
- Fading is the tendency of fabrics to lose their color fastness when exposed to moisture or sunlight.

Fagoting
- Fagoting is the joining to two pieces of fabric with an overcast stitch such as a zig zag satin stitch. Instead of the fabric overlapping, the threads overlap the fabric butted together.

Faille
- Faille is a woven silk fabric with a ribbed appearance. Also called Bengaline. Spring suites and coats are often made of Faille, a light luster fabric that drapes and sews nicely.

Faille Taffeta
- Faille Taffeta is a firm crossweave rib fabric and is usually very heavy.

Fake Fur
- Fake Fur is a synthetic fabric simulating fur with long fluffy fibers.

Fall
- Fall is the portion of the fabric that drapes over a crest such as the outside of a collar.

Fallow
- Fallow means light yellow brown.
**False Bias**
- True Bias is a forty five degree angle across the grain of a fabric, but False bias is a near diagonal line that is not forty five degrees. False Bias may actually be thirty or sixty degrees across the grain.

**Fanny Pack**
- A Fanny Pack is a purse like accessory worn around the waist.

**Fascinator**
- Fascinator is a corchet or lace head scarf.

**Fashion**
- Fashion is style in the way the body is adorned. It is more than mere clothing (shirts, slacks, gowns, and swim suits), it is the complex image creation achieved by the style of fashion design.

**Fashion Fabric**
- Fabrics that are used to make the outer part of a garment are called fashion fabrics just as the garment design may described as fashion.

**Fashion Pattern**
- Fashion Pattern is a complete pattern with lines and markings for cut lines, grain lines, points to join pieces (notches), and seam allowances.

**Fashion Plate**
- Fashion Plate is a term used to refer to clothing style or one who wears the lastest fashion styles.

**Fasteners**
- Fasteners are accessories used to close garments or other projects. Buttons, Snaps, Hook and Eye, and a variety of other fastening systems would be considered fasteners.

**Fat Eighth**
- This is a special cut of fabric providing the quilter with greater squaredness than a normal one eighth cut of fabric. To cut a Fat Eighth split a fat quarter in two to for a piece 18" X 11".

**Fat Quarter**
- The Fat Quarter maximized the fabric for quilting purposes and is
cut by folding one yard of fabric in half lengthwise and then again widthwise. The final cut should be 18" X 22".

**Fatigue**
- Fatigue refers to the work clothing or uniform of a military person usually colored to blend with the environment while in the field.

**Fat Sixteenth**
- Fat Sixteenth is a cut of fabric measuring 9" by 22" or the equivalent of 1/16th yard of fabric.

**Faux Leather**
- Faux Leather is fabric that looks like and feels like leather but is not actually leather. It may be made of a variety of fibers including natural and synthetic.

**Faux Sherpa Fleece**
- Faux Sherpa Fleece is a fabric designed to imitate genuine Serpa Fleece a rich wool.

**Favor**
- Favor is a small token of appreciation or gift from a wedding couple to attendants at a wedding. Also known as Wedding Favors.

**Favoring**
- Favoring is a tendency to prefer one thing over another. It is common for people to favor their left side or leg over their right side, requiring adjustments in the fitting process to accommodate this tendency. When we favor certain colors, textures, or styles, it also affects our objectivity and the selection of project materials, design, and production.

**Fawn**
- Fawn is a light grayish brown.

**Feather Stitch**
- Feather Stitch is a hand stitch also commonly known as the Briar Stitch or Single Coral Stitch characterized by its feathery design. Many sewing machines include a mock Feather Stitch as well.

**Featherboning**
• Featherboning is a notion used to provide stability, lift, and strength to various garments especially lift bras. Featherboning comes in several varieties including flat, covered and uncovered boning.

**Feathers Design**
• The Feathers Design is a quilt design using heart shaped fabrics on two sides of a main stem piece. The design may be round, heart shaped, freeform, or area fill.

**Fedora**
• Fedora is a hat made of soft felt with a crease on the top of the hat.

**Feed Dogs**
• On a sewing machine, the needle movement and bobbin form the initial stitch, but in order for the stitch to be completed from one stitch to the next the fabric must be moved forward. Otherwise instead of getting a nice row of stitches, you end up with an ugly growing knot in just one place. The sewing machine uses a mechanical devise called "feed dogs" to move the fabric forward or backward. If you will notice when the needle comes down and begins to enter the needle plate, a set of moving pullers along the underside of where the presser foot sits begin to drop down under the needle plate. As the needle rises, so do the pullers. As the needle rises even higher, the pullers move from front to back. When fabric is fed under the presser foot, these pullers are hidden under the fabric, however, they do their magic going down when the needle enters the needle plate, rising to grip the fabric when the needle rises, and finally pulling the fabric from front to back as the needle reaches its highest position and begins its journey downward again. The pressure of the presser foot on top of the fabric and the gripping of the feed dogs from below act like little fingers gripping the fabric to provide a smooth movement and create a consistent line of stitches. The feed dogs simply operate in reverse when the reverse button is depressed pulling the fabric back toward the sewer and creating a back stitch.

**Feed Sacks**
• Feed Sacks are fabric bags used during the 1800's to hold feed grains like corn, flour, and meal. Today these bags are treasured collector's items and many quilters yearn to use the fabric to make quilts with an historic flare.
Feed Teeth
- Some feed dogs are smooth on top and depend on pressure alone to pull the fabric, but most feed dogs have little grooves in the top of the feed dogs shaped like little teeth. These teeth gently press into the fabric provide effective gripping and pull the fabric the way it is intended.

Fell
- To fell a seam (join two pieces of fabric together wrong sides together) fold the fabrics together to encase the seam. This may also be accomplished with an overcast stitch.

Felt
- Felt is a non woven fabric finish in which fibers are locked together though a process of heat, moisture, and pressure. Wool, hair, fur, and synthetic fibers may be used to produce Felt.

Ferret
- Ferret is a narrow tape made of cotton, silk, or wool.

Fez
- A Fez is a man's hat common in Easter Mediterranean countries characterized by it cone shape, brimless, flat top.

Fiber
- Fiber is the basic unit of filaments whether natural or synthetic which are twisted together to form yarns and woven to make fabrics.

Fiber Fill
- Fiber Fill is a special manufactured product designed as a filler for pillows, quilts, mattresses, pads, sleeping bags, and outerwear.

Fibranne
- Fibranne is a spun rayon fabric.

Fichu
- Fichu is a light triangular scarf draped over shoulders or worn to fill a low neckline.
Fiery
• Fiery is fire red color.

Figure Type
• Figure Type is a term describing the general shape of a person’s body identifying its distinctive characteristics for proper pattern development, selection, and use.

Filament
• A filament is a manufactured continuous or indefinite length fiber.

Filet
• Filet is a lace with geometric designs and square mesh.

Filler Bars
• A Filler Pattern is any quilting design.

Filler Pattern
• Filler Quilting is a technique of using a cross hatch pattern to fill in large open spaces in a quilt.

Fill Stitch
• Fill Stitch is a special embroidery type stitch consisting of running stitches sewn in patterns to fill specific regions of a design. These fill stitches may be altered to create a variety of stitch effects by changing stitch angle, length, and/or sequence.

Filler Stitch
• Filler Stitch (Fill, Fill Stitch) is stitching used to fill a specified area using running stitches that may be varied by stitch length. Other fill stitches include Pattern Fills, Fancy Fills, Step Fills, and other creative stitches.

Fillet
• Fillet is narrow ribbon used as a headband.

Filling
• Filling, weft, and crossgrain are crosswise threads of woven fabric running from side to side.

Findings
Findings is a synonym for notions intended for use in a given project. Thus findings may include trims, hooks, linings, zippers, buttons, threads, snaps, and basically anything to be used except fabric and sewing machine.

**Finger Cots**
- Finger Cots are special rubber or synthetic finger cover protectors used to protect the fingers and to provide increased finger grip dexterity.

**Finger Pressing**
- Especially when a fabric does not lend itself to pressing with an iron, use your fingernail to open the seam allowance and press with your fingers along the fabric line to form a pressed finish. Finger pressing provides a quick way to open the quilt seam and form a crease.

**Fingering Weight Yarns**
- Fingering Weight Yarns are light weight yarns also called baby weight yarn, fine yarns, or lace weight yarns.

**Fingernail Polish Remover**
- Fingernail Polish Remover is a chemical used to remove fingernail polish.

**Fingertip Veil**
- Fingertip Veil is a veil that is about three feet long and reaches down to the fingertips.

**Finish**
- Finish is a term used to describe several things. 1. The texture of the cloth. 2. The completion of edges (seams, hems, facings). 3. Apply appropriate methods to raw edges (seams, hems, facings).

**Finished Fabric**
- Finished Fabric is fabric that has been fully processed and prepared for use in constructing sewing projects.

**Finished Size**
- Finished Size is the measure of the finished garment.

**Finishing**
- Finishing is the process of completing a process such as clipping the
jump stitches, trimming loose threads, removing excess backing or facing materials, pressing, steaming etc. to produce a completed finished piece.

**Fire Engine Red**
- Fire Engine Red is a bright red.

**Fishnet**
- Fishnet is an open coarse mesh fabric.

**Fishtail Train**
- A Fishtail Train is a flow of fabric fitted at the hips and flared out from the knee to the hem.

**Fit**
- Fit refers to how well clothing or garments adorn the body following the body contours with appropriate comfort and style.

**Fit Model**
- Fit Model is the standard measurement and figure type used for standard sizing.

**Fitted**
- A garment is said to be fitted when the garment accentuates the natural contours of the body without binding or sagging.

**Fitted Point Sleeve**
- A Fitted Point Sleeve is long and narrow. It tapers to a point along the back of the hand.

**Fitted Sleeve**
- Fitted Sleeve is a style of sleeve that is usually full arm length or three quarter length close fit sleeves. Full length fitted sleeves are called Julie sleeves.

**Fitting**
- Fitting is the process of achieving a fitted garment. Each part of the body (shoulders, hips, arms, legs, neck, check, waist, etc.) have special needs that must be accommodated in the fitting process. Once the initial fitting is approximated, the garment is sewing, and
then the finished garment is adjusted for final fit.

Flagging
- When all sewing machines were single stitch only machines, there was very little flagging. Today it is common to sew with a zig zag needle plate and a zig zag presser foot. The result too often is a tendency of some fabrics to bounce when the needle moves up and down. This is called flagging. The best way to reduce flagging is to use a straight stitch needle plate with a straight stitch presser foot, however, this does limit your stitches to the straight stitch. Second best is to set the machine in the left needle position. Stitches formed in the left needle position have fabric support on three sides instead of all the way around the needle hole. Another way to reduce flagging is to use stabilizer under the fabric.

Flak Jacket
- Flak Jacket is a vest used to protect against flying debris and bullets in a police or military setting.

Flame
- Flame is the color reddish orange.

Flame Retardant
- Fabric Retardant is treatment applied to fabric to make the fabric resistant to burning and reduces the fabric's flammability.

Flange
- Flange is a decorative border added to a pillow extending beyond the actual pillow form.

Flannel
- Flannel is a cotton lining material that works great for the torso of vests, jackets, and coats because it adds warmth. It should not be used in sleeves because it tends to bind in tight areas.

Flannelette
- Flannelette is a fabric (usually cotton) like flannel, but lighter weight.

Flare-bottom
- Flare-bottom is a fashion style in which pants are flared or made overly full at the cuff.
Flared Skirt
- Flared Skirt is a skirt that begins small around the waist but flares or spreads out gradually toward the floor.

Flat
- Flat is a shoe with no or a flat heal.

Flat Bed
- Older sewing machines and may commercial and industrial sewing machines are designed so the flat sewing surface of the sewing machine fits in line with the flat surface of a cabinet or sewing table. The machine is usually fastened into the cabinet to maintain this flat sewing surface. Therefore the sewing machine is known as a flat bed sewing machine or a sewing machine with a flat bed.

Flat Collar
- Flat Collar is a collar that lies flat against the neck of the garment (sailor, peter pan)

Flat Crepe
- Flat Crepe is a crepe fabric that is characteristically flat, soft, and pliable.

Flat Finish
- A flat finish is a flat finish. It may include cut edge, zig zagged, overlocked, overcasted singed, or taped finishes.

Flat Front Pants
- Flat Front Pants are seamless, pocketless, and straight pants.

Flat Lining
- A method of applying underlining that leaves a flat finish is called flat lining.

Flat-Application Elastic
- Stitch & Stretch™ Elastic is a flat elastic tape applied flat. The tape has cords running through it to make trimming to size easier.

Flat-Fell Seam
- Seams can sometimes appear thick or bulky. A good way to reduce this bulk is to use a flat-fell seam. In simplest terms, a flat-fell seam is a seam where part of the seam allowance bulk is trimmed away. To sew a flat-fell seam: Place two fabrics right sides together. Stitch them together. This will result with a row of stitch and two seam allowance beside the stitching. Trim one of the seam allowance very carefully close to the row of stitches. Turn the other seam allowance under. Now top stitch a second row of stitching parallel to the first over the single seam allowance underneath. The result is a neatly encased seam with two rows of stitching.

**Flax**
- Flax is a natural fiber used to make linen fabrics, and in more modern times referred to simply as linen.

**Flaxen**
- Flaxen is a fiber resembling flax.

**Fleece**
- Fleece is a soft deep pile polyester fabric used for clothing.

**Flight Suit**
- Flight Suit is a one piece garment worn by pilots and other airline personnel.

**Flip Flop**
- Flip Flop is a rubbery scandal with a bridge over the big toe and the other toes loosely holding the scandal on the foot. It takes its name from the sound it makes as the wearer flip flops down along.

**Flipper**
- Flipper is a shoe with a wide web worn by diver to aid in paddling through the water.

**Flocking**
- Flocking is an embellishment process used to decorate the face of a fabric. The process involves applying adhesive printed on fabrics and the chopped fibers are applied by means of dusting, air-brushing, or electrostatic charges. Excess is removed by mechanical brushes.
• Float is a term referring to loose threads in overly long satin stitches, dangling threads, and jump stitches.

**Floor Length**
• A Floor Length gown is a gown whose skirt touches the floor or barely touches the floor allowing only the tips of the shoes to show while walking.

**Floral Fabrics**
• Floral Fabrics are fabrics with flowers printed on them.

**Florid**
• Florid is the color ruddy red.

**Floss**
• Floss or embroidery floss is single strand untwisted silk thread used for hand embroidery. (Originally from India and China).

**Flounce**
• Flounce is a ruffle shaped in a circle.

**Flourescence**
• Flourescence is a jewelry term describing the reflection or reaction of ultraviolet light by a diamond.

**Flush**
• Flush is the color of skin when a person appears washed out.

**Fly Zipper**
• Fly Zipper is a special strong zipper used in men's pants.

**Fly-Front Zipper**
• Fly-Front Zipper is the same as a Fly Zipper and is used in men's pants.

**Flying Geese**
• Flying Geese is a quilt design involving triangles and background fabrics.

**Flywheel**
• Inside a sewing machine is a metal weight mounted on the upper shaft used to keep the upper shaft in proper balance. This device is
called the flywheel.

**Foam Pad**
- Foam Pad is a cushion made of poly foam used to fill pillows, seat cushions, etc.

**FOB**
- FOB is the abbreviation for "Freight on Board" and refers to the shipping point of origin. It is also a term used by tailors to describe pockets that are sewn on the chest.

**Foil Adhesive**
- Foil Adhesive is an type of glue for applying metallic foils.

**Fold lines**
- Patterns are marked with a fold line where the pattern can be folded to shorten the pattern.

**Foot**
- Sewing machines use a foot or presser foot to press down on top of the fabric during sewing so the feed dogs below will move the fabric. It is also the SAE measure equaling twelve inches.

**Footwear**
- Footwear is a term referring to any type of clothing used to protect the feet such as shoes, socks, boots, scandals, etc.

**Forest Green**
- Forest Green is the color yellow olive green.

**Fork**
- The crotch is also called the fork in the pants where the legs join.

**Form**
- Form is a term describing the shape of the garment wearer such as a mannequin.

**Form Fitting**
- Form Fitting also known as Slim Fit describes a garment style that is straight to the ankle except for a curve around the hips.
Formal Skirt
• Formal Skirts are the portion of gowns proceeding from the waist down toward the floor and may include a wide variety of styles including: Ballerina, Bouffant, Circular, Flared, Full, Mermaid, Slim, Tiered, or Trumpet.

Formal (Formal Wear)
• Formal attire includes articles of clothing such as tuxedo, suit, dress shirt, cummerbund, black tie, formal gown for ladies.

Foulard
• Foulard is a garment made of foulard fabric a lightweight plain woven silk.

Foundation Paper Piecing
• Foundation Paper Piecing is a quilting technique in which a paper pattern is used to guide the construction of a quilt block. The fabric pieces are actually sewn in place on the paper pattern as a foundation. Also known as Paper Piecing.

Foundation Piecing
• Foundation Piecing is block assembly by sewing pieces to a backing or foundation fabric like muslin. This technique provides great stability and strength to the quilt.

Four In Hand
• Four In Hand is type of necktie employing a slipknot with long overlapping ends.

Four Patch
• A Four Patch Block is a quilt block with 4 pieces the same size or a block with two, four, or multiples of four blocks per row of blocks.

Fourrag'ere
• Fourrag'ere is decorative braid worn over the shoulder to acknowledge certain status or rank.

Foxy
• Foxy is the color of reddish brown.
• FPU is an abbreviation for Fabric Production Knit.

Frame
• Frame is the part of an embroidery hoop that holds the inner hoop creating a firm hold on the hooped fabric for embroidering.

Fray Check
• Frey Check™ is a quality seam sealant used to reduce frey especially on raw edges and on buttonholes.

Fray Retardant
• Fray Retardant is a chemical substance used to stop fabric from fraying.

Frayed-Edge
• Frayed-Edge is a term describing raw fabric edges where the threads are uneven and loose.

Fraying
• Fraying is the process of a raw fabric edge exposing uneven and loose threads. Fraying is sometimes done intentionally to leave a fluffy loose thread finish.

Free Arm
• Older home sewing machines were made to fit into sewing cabinets flush with the top of the cabinet. These are called "flat bed" sewing machines. Most modern sewing machines are designed to be used with or without a sewing cabinet. One of the innovations that modern sewing machines have provided is the ability to sew within smaller places like around the cuff of a sleeve. This is usually achieved by removing a portable table or casing from around the needle area of the sewing machine. Often these casings include neat storage for presser feet, tweezers, and bobbins inside them. Once removed, the bobbin area of the sewing machine is usually only about three inches square as you look at the machine form the left. This enables you to slide a sleeve, cuff, or similar project around the bobbin area and sew around the entire project simply by rotating the project around the bobbin area. This innovation is called "free arm" and may be applied as free arm sewing or free arm sewing machine or simply the free arm of the sewing machine.

Free Style Fillers
• Free Style Fillers are block fillers sewn without designated grid or pattern.

**Free-Motion Quilting**
• Free Motion Quilting, free motion stitching, stippling, and free motion embroidery depend on the ability of the quilter to freely move the fabric. The darning foot is a sewing machine presser foot that holds the fabric down only when the needle is coming up. Therefore, the sewer freely moves the fabric to create whatever design is desirable.

**Freezer Paper**
• Freezer Paper is a special paper used by butchers to wrap meat (Reynolds®).

**Freezer Paper Applique**
• Freezer Paper Applique is an applique technique using freezer paper as a fuse n' bond because the freezer paper has a paper and a plasticized surface. Take a piece of the Freezer Paper and lay your applique on top if it wrong side down. Using a hot iron press the applique onto the slick plastic side of the Freezer Paper to fuse them together. Trim around the applique leaving a quarter inch seam allowance. Peal off the paper backing, and fuse (using a hot iron) the applique to the foundation fabric.

**Fremo**
• Fremo is a slang term for Free Motion Quilting or Free Motion Embroidery.

**French Bustle**
• French Bustle or Underbustle is a garment treatment frequently appearing on formal gowns especially wedding gowns where the fabric or train is pulled up and fastened at the back of the gown. Particular to the French Bustle, however, is a technique in which the fabric is fastened from underneath the skirt leaving the ornate lacy fabric poofed up and exposed on the back of the dress.

**French Cuff**
• French Cuff is a shirt cuff characterized by a wide double cuff utilizing cuff links.
**French Curve Ruler**
- The French curve ruler helps measure and trace patterns. It is useful when drawing slopers and fitting patterns.

**French Fold Binding**
- French Fold Binding is a technique in which fabric raw edged are encased in the seam allowance. To sew a French Fold Binding, place fabrics wrong sides together allowing a 1/8th inch seam allowance. Flit the fabric right sides together and stitch using a 1/4" seam allowance.

**French Hem**
- French Hem is an heirloom sewing technique to finish hems.

**French Knot**
- A French Knot is a hand embroidery stitch with a three dimensional decorative appearance.

**French Seam**
- Delicate fabrics and especially see-through fabrics need to hide the raw edges of seams. To achieve this first, sew wrong sides together and trim the seam allowance to 1/8th inch. Second, turn the fabrics over so the seam is fully encased. Sew a final row of top stitching for form a beautiful courture finish known as the "French Seam".

**Friendship Quilt**
- A Friendship Quilt is a group effort to make a quilt. Each participant makes and signs a block on the quilt top.

**Frieze, Frise**
- Frieze is a Dutch overcoat fabric used by military for protection against bad weather.

**Fright Wig**
- Fright Wig is an artificial hair piece that stands up in a scary fashion.

**Fringe**
- Fringe is decorative notions sewn on the edge of fabric to add an ornate appearance.
Frock, Frock Coat
- Frock is a garment worn by monks characterized by a long loose mantle.

Frog Closure
- Frog Closure is a decorative closure made of cording or braid and a soft ball of cording or button. The Frog Closure is derived from China.

Frog Stitching
- Frog Stitching is not actually stitching at all; it is unstitching or taking out stitches using a seam ripper to "Rip-it".

Front Yoke
- Front Yoke is the front chest portion of a garment.

Frontlet
- Frontlet is a piece of fabric worn around the forehead.

FTC
- FTC is an abbreviation for Federal Trade Commission which issues product numbers for U.S. manufacturers, importers, and distributors of textiles, wool and fur products as a way to monitor and enforce import - export laws.

Fuchsia
- Fuchsia is the color reddish purple.

Fuji Silk
- Fuji Silk is silk used for lightweight blouses.

Fukusa
- In the United States, gifts are often wrapped in brightly colored paper, but in Japan Fukusa (a silk fabric usually cut in squares) is used to wrap expensive gifts. It can also be used to accent garment construction.

Fuliginous
- Fuliginous is term relating to a dark coloration.
**Full Skirt**
- Full Skirt is a skirt flowing from the gathered waistline toward the floor that is very full giving freedom for easy walking.

**Full-Cut**
- Full-Cut is a jewelry term describing a gemstone that is fully cut with at least 58 facets.

**Full Slip**
- A Full Slip is an undergarment worn under dresses which has a top and skirt portion.

**Fulvous**
- Fulvous is the color brownish yellow.

**Fur**
- Fur is a natural fabric made from the skins of animals such as beaver.

**Fuscous**
- Fuscous is the color brownish gray.

**Fusecut**
- Fusecut is the process of cutting the fabric with a hot knife leaving the end of the fabric roll heat sealed.

**Fusible**
- Webbing, interfacing, and certain fabric tapes have the characteristic of fastening or adhering the materials together when heated with an iron as with heat-activated glue.

**Fusible Hem Tape**
- Narrow rolls of hem tape are used where stitching is not preferred or where basting or additional stabilizing are needed.

**Fusible Interfacing**
- To provide added stability, crispness, and wear ability an added layer of fabric is often used under the finished garment. This added fabric is called "interfacing", and there are two types: fusible and sew-in. Fusible simply means that the fabric bonds with the outer fabric. Fusible interfacing is generally backed with a special heat activated resin adhesive so it will bond to the outer fabric smoothly.
and securely. A steam iron is used to attach the fusible interfacing to the outer fabric and the heat and steam activate the adhesive. Fusible Pellon(R) and Stacy's(R) Shape Flex are popular brands.

**Fusible Interlining**
- Fusible Interlining is interlining material applied to the inside of jackets and other garments by pressing.

**Fusible Thread**
- Fusible thread may be used like other sewing threads, however, it has the special quality of bonding to the fabric when ironed. Thread Fuse™, and Stitch 'n Fuse®.

**Fusible Webbing**
- Fusible webbing is a two sided material used bond two fabric pieces together. They may be ironed on or may be paper backed (pull paper off and press). Several brands are available.

**Fusing Machines**
- Fusing Machines are manufacturing equipment used to produce fused textiles.

**Fussy Cut**
- Fussy Cut is the quilting term for centering a specific item such as an applique' within a design. Usually Fussy Cat uses a template to insure proper centering placement. Kona Bay's Emperors Collection of fabric has some beautiful images of Japanese women. Recently, Donna used this fabric to make a jacket. Using the Fussy Cat technique, Donna centered the Japanese Giesa on the back of the jacket producing a beautifully designed garment.

**Fustian**
- Fustian is a strong fabric commonly made with cotton or linen.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Gabardine
- Gabardine is a fabric finish characterized by tight weave, twill, and worsted fabric with a diagonal line on the good side. It may be constructed of cotton, polyester, rayon, wool, and various blends.

Galosh
- Galosh or Galoshes are overshoes designed to protect dress shoes from the elements of ice, snow, mud, and slush.

Gambano
- Gambanois a legging worn by horsemen like chaps.

Gamboge
- Gamboge is a strong intense yellow color.

Garb
- Garb is slang for clothing.

Garland
- Garland is a wreath of greenery.

Garment
- A garment is another name for clothing.

Garment Technologist
- A Garment Technology is the technical knowledge, processes, and practice of developing patterns, producing fabrics, and making clothing.

Garnet
- Garnet is a dark red color.

Garnetting
- Garnetting is a process to refine cotton or other fibers for use as batting material.
**Garrison Cap**
- Garrison Cap is a folding cap with no visor often worn as part of a military uniform. (Service Cap)

**Garter**
- A Garter is a band used to hold hosiery in place or worn on a shirt sleeve to hold it up.

**Gaskin**
- The term Gaskin refers to a type of pants that is generally obsolete.

**Gather**
- Easing or sewing a larger piece of fabric to a smaller piece of fabric is called gathering.

**Gathered Seam**
- Easing or sewing a larger piece of fabric to a smaller piece of fabric is called gathering. The stitch line is the gathering seam.

**Gathering**
- Easing or sewing a larger piece of fabric to a smaller piece of fabric is called gathering.

**Gathering Tape**
- Easing a larger piece of fabric to a smaller piece of fabric using seam tape (double sided fabric tape) is called gathering tape.

**Gathers**
- The small folds in the fabric created when a larger piece of fabric is eased onto a smaller piece of fabric are called gathers.

**Gaucho**
- Gauchos are pants or divided skirt with wide legs. Gauchos stop just above the top of boots which are commonly worn with gauchos.

**Gauge**
- Gauge is the measure of the number of stitches in one inch (in knitting machine operation) to one and one half inches (for hosiery or sweater machine operations).
**Gauge of Stitches**  
- Gauge of stitches is the measure of stitches per inch or one and one half inches for some operations.

**Gauntlet Sleeve**  
- Gauntlet Sleeve or Pointed Sleeve is a style of long fitted sleeve characterized by a pointed treatment striking at the top of the hand.

**Gauntlets**  
- Gauntlets are dress gloves that go above the wrists.

**Gauze**  
- Gauze is a sheer woven fabric with an open transparent texture which may be made from cotton, silk, rayon, or other fibers.

**Gay Colors**  
- Gay Colors are those colors that tend to make us happy such as the brighter shades of various colors.

**Gazar**  
- Gazar is a stiff sheer fabric comparable to silk organza.

**Geneva Bands**  
- Geneva Bands are clerical articles consisting of two strips of white cloth.

**Geneva Gown**  
- Geneva Gown is an academic gown worn by clergymen.

**Geometric Fabrics**  
- Geometric Fabrics are fabrics printed with geometric designs such as circles, ovals, squares, rectangles, etc.

**Georgette**  
- Georgette is a fabric commonly used for dresses and blouses. It is sheer and light weight. It may be made of silk, polyester, or other fibers.

**Geotextiles**  
- Geotextiles are fabrics designed and manufactured for civil engineering
Geranium
- Geranium is the color vivid red.

Geta
- Geta is a wooden shoe worn in Japan.

Gibson Sleeve
- Gibson Sleeve A sleeve that is full from shoulder to wrist, often with a puff at the shoulder for added fullness.

Gift Ideas
- Blessed are those who give, for it is more blessed to give than to receive. But... what do you give? You could give some trinket or bauble from the nearest department store. You could go with popular labeled items like College Tee Shirts, Coffee Cups with Imprinted Log, or pencil sets with an inscribed sentiment. Or you could give something truly unique. Truly Personal. Truly inspiring. You could give something you created yourself. A shirt, an embroidered tie, a memory quilt, an elaborate wall hanging, your own personal expression and creativity. Gift Ideas are endless.

Gigot
- Gigot is a style or Leg O'Mutton Sleeve of full sleeve at the shoulder and upper arm but fitted toward the wrist and forearm.

Gillie
- Gillie is a show with decorative laces and a low top.

Ginger
- Ginger is the color deep brown.

Gingham
- Gingham is a woven cotton fabric often in checks often used for pattern pretests.

Girdle
- Girdle is a snug fitting undergarment made of elastic fabric covering the waist and hips.
Girth
- Girth is a band of braid that is attached to a saddle to hold it onto a horse.

Give
- How much does the thread, elastic, or fabric stretch is the degree of its elasticity called give.

Glace' Finish Thread
- Some quilting threads, hand sewing threads, button threads, and carpet threads are specially treated to produce a hard smooth finish and are called Grace's finish threads.

Glad
- Glad or Glad Rags is slang referring to dressy clothing.

Glass Fiber
- Glass Fiber consists of manufactured glass filaments for use in insulation, composite reinforcement, and other industrial applications. Glass Fibers are very strong and inflexible. They will not burn and will not conduct electricity. Insects, mildew, sun exposure, and temperature have little effect on them.

Glasshead Pins
- Glasshead pins are pins used for pinning pattern pieces and fabric during sewing assembly.

Glaucous
- Glaucous is the color bluish white or gray.

Glazed Finish
- Like the application of bees wax coating on threads, glazed finish (or bonded finish) is a batting treatment (using a special resin) to prevent bearding or batting popping through the quilt face or back.
Glazing
- Glazing is a smooth, glossy surface or coating.

Glen Plaid
- Glen Plaid is broken check woven fabric.

Glengarry
- Glengarry is a Scottish wool cap.

Glitter
- Glitter is a decorative notion that may be glued onto craft and sewing projects creating a sparkling look on the surface.

Glove Silk
- Glove Silk also called nylon Simplex is a fine knit fabric.

Gloves
- Gloves is a garment used to protect the hands from harsh surfaces, harsh weather, etc.

Glue-Baste
- Temporarily attaching two fabrics together with washable glue stick is called glue-basting.

Glues
- Glues are adhesives used for many different purposes from basting glues to super glue for repairs.

GMM
- GMM is an abbreviation for General Merchandising Manager.

Gold
- Gold is the color deep yellow representative of the color of the rare metal by the same name.

Golden
- Golden is having the color of gold or blondish yellow.
• Golf Shirt is a T Shirt with collar and V neck with two or three buttons sometimes called a polo shirt or Tennis Shirt.

**Gore**
• Gore is the decorative or practical vertical line of a garment which may involve tapered panels, seams, etc.

**Gore-Tex**
• WL Gore and Assoc. Inc. created Gore-Tex to repel water while providing great comfort. This porous fabric is great for active outerwear.

**Gorget**
• Gorget is throat or neck covering armor.

**Gown**
• Gown is a fancy dress. Gowns are formal attire usually with elegant skirts flowing from the waist to toward the floor including many different styles such as: Ballerina, Bouffant, Circular, Flared, Full, Mermaid, Slim, Tiered, or Trumpet.

**GPU**
• GPU is the abbreviation for Gross Product Unit Number noted on the care label of children's sleepwear which must be labeled "Flame Resistant" as enforced by the Federal Trade Commission.

**Grabbit**
• Grabbit is a magnetic notion used like a pin cushion to hold pins.

**Grade**
• When you were in school, if you did a great job or even if you didn't, your teacher gave you a grade to evaluate the quality of your work. In the same way fabrics are given grades to assess their quality. In essence, fabric grade is the quality of the fabric.

**Grading**
• "Ruffles have ridges", but garments look better without unsightly bulk. To reduce bulk and avoid such ridges the seam allowances may be trimmed to different widths by this technique called grading. Scissors are held at a steep angle while trimming the seam allowance. This produces different widths of seam allowance.
Grain
• This has nothing to do with corn. Grain is all about the weave of the fabric. Running lengthwise is the lengthwise grain. Thread across the fabric from selvage to selvage is called crossgrain. Diagonally running forty five degree angles is the bias grain. Grading may also refer to the adjustment of pattern size.

Grainline
• Woven fabrics are constructed of threads crisscrossing each other to form the fabric. When you examine a piece of fabric, notice the lengthwise line of the weave moving along the fabric. This is called the "grainline". The lengthwise weave is called "lengthwisegrain" and the cross weave is called "crossgrain".

Grainline Arrows
• Tissue paper patterns produced by pattern houses usually have arrows or pointers indicating how to align the pattern piece with the lengthwise grainline of the fabric. It is important to layout these pattern pieces to match the grain of the fabric insuring proper fabric drape and the proper appearance of the finished garment. Avoid sag and distortion by aligning with the grainline.

Granny Dress
• Granny Dress is a long sleeved, high necked, loose-fitting dress.

Graph Paper
• Paper and fabric pattern tracing materials are very helpful for dressmaking and quilting. Grid Grip™ is the brand name of a gridded pattern paper especially for quilting.

Grassy
• Grassy is the color of green grass or the texture similar to grass.

Gray
• Gray is the color of murky off white.

Grayish
• Grayish is the color somewhat gray.
• Greatcoat is a heavy overcoat.

**Greatcoat**
• Greave is a shin covering armor.

**Greave**
• A Greave Gown is a dress with a cloth belt around the waist reminiscent of ancient Greek dresses.

**Grecian Gown**
• Green is the color of grass.

**Green**
• Blue Work, Black Work, Green Work, and Red Work are all terms describing the technique of using a single color thread for outline embroidery.

**Green Work**
• Grenadine is the color reddish orange and also refers to various open weave fabrics.

**Grenadine**
• Grid is the process through which denim is ruffed to look worn.

**Grid**
• Grids are very helpful to layout and design all sorts of projects.

**Grid**
• Griege Goods is unfinished fabric often called gray goods.

**Griege Goods**
• Grinding is a process through which denim is ruffed to look worn.
**Gripper Snaps**
- Gripper Snaps are metal or plastic fasteners with prongs on them to attach them.

**Grizzle**
- Grizzle is the color brownish red.

**Grizzled**
- Grizzled is fabric characteristic of streaked gray.

**Grogram**
- Grogram is a silk or wool fabric with a coarse loose weave.

**Grommet**
- Grommet is a device made of rubber or metal that fills a hole and forms a hole for laces, cords, wires, or other string items through the hole. Electrical grommets are usually made of rubber or plastic, while fabric or garment grommets are usually made of metal.

**Groove**
- Groove is an indentation often between fabric folds.

**Groove of the Seam**
- The well of a seam or indentation of a folded over seam is also known as the groove of the seam.

**Grosgrain**
- Grosgrain is a rayon woven ribbed ribbon that must be preshrunk before use.

**Ground Fabric**
- Many quilt blocks are constructed on background fabric with various applique. The background fabric is often referred to as "ground fabric".

**G-string**
- G-string is a narrow piece of fabric worn between the legs attached to a waist cord as underwear.
G-suit
• G-suit is a suit of clothing designed to help pilots and astronauts manage the heavy G forces encountered in flight.

Guar Gum
• Guar Gum or Galactomannan is a polymer used in the manufacture and processing of fabrics.

Guard's Check
• Guard's Check is fabric with a two by two color check design.

Guayabera Shirt
• Guayabera Shirt is a Cuban's shirt with four pockets worn like a jacket.

Guide Stitch
• Guide Stitch is a group of stitches used much like basting stitches in multi-hooping situations to maintain stability with embroidery.

Guild
• Guild is an association or organization of people with common interests who meet regularly to share ideas, projects, and interests. A Quilt Guild is a group of quilters.

Guimpe
• Guimpe is an underblouse commonly worn under a pinafore or jumper.

Guipure
• Guipure Lace is a very heavy Venise styled lace with circular, geometric, or flowered designs.

Gules
• Gules is the color red.

Gum Boot
• Gum Boot is a rubber boot.

Gunmetal
• Gunmetal is the color bluish gray.
Gusset
• A gusset is added fabric sewn into a seam line to give fullness to a garment.

Gutterman Threads
• Gutterman is a company brand of threads including a wide range of thread types.

TERMS & DEFINITIONS

H

Habergeon
• Habergeon is a jacket of mail worn in the middle ages. It is shorter than hauberk.

Habiliments
• Habiliments are those elements in the design of clothing that make them distinctively associated with a specific occupation or event. This includes such habiliments as Company Logos, Arm Patches, etc.

Habit
• Habit is a term that relates to distinctive costume or uniform worn to
indicate, special function, religious calling, rank, or status. The costume worn by a nun and the costume worn by horsemen(women) in competition are called Habits.

**Habutai**
- Habutai is a Japanese silk lighter than shantung but heavier than China Silk. It is produced from waste silk and often has a "shot-about" look due to its many fabric defects. Habutai is often sold by weight and measured by "momme" (1 Momme= 3.75g).

**Haik**
- Haik is a bulky white fabric used in northern Africa for outer garments.

**Hair Canvas**
- Hair canvas is a stiff interfacing made of a mixture of fibers including goat hair or horse hair with cotton, rayon, or wool. Check out Pellon® Sewer's Choice. Hair Canvas is a heavy interfacing for use mostly in tailoring suits.

**Hair Shirt**
- A Hairshirt is an uncomfortable, itchy, skin irritating shirt made of rough woven animal hair. The Hairshirt is worn by religious people seeking penance.

**Haircloth**
- Haircloth is a term describing stiffening fabrics for use as upholstery or garments which are made from horsehair or camel hair.

**Hairline**
- Hairline fabrics are fabrics with a subtle design line running along the grainline or crossgrain achieved by one or a few threads.

**Hakama**
- Hakama is a Japanese skirt tied at the waist.

**Half Boot**
- A Half Boot is a boot with a boot top above the ankle but below the knee.
**Half-backstitch**
- Half-backstitch is a hand sewing technique for anchoring seams and other applications.

**Half-slip**
- A Half-slip is an underskirt usually with elastic waistband, but it has no top.

**Half Square Triangle**
- Half Square Triangle is technique for making quilt squares using two fabric triangles. To make a Half Square Triangle, take two fabric squares, place them right sides together. Fold the square diagonally and finger press or using a ruler mark the diagonal of the square. Stitch two seams parallel to the diagonal center using a quarter inch seam allowance on either side of the line. Cut along the diagonal line making two sets of triangle each triangle being half of a square. Result: two half square triangle blocks or HST blocks.

**Halfstitch**
- Halfstitch is a term referring to the use of the sewing machine feature Needle Up/Needle Down. If you are ready to pivot, it is important to make an additional half stitch putting the needle down to hold your stitches in place while your turn the fabric. Similarly, if you finish sewing and your needle happens to be down, an additional halfstitch will free your fabric for removal from the sewing machine.

**Halftone**
- Halftone is a term that refers to a series of dots on a fabric that give the look of a lighter shade color. The number of dots is counted to determine their frequency and measures as dots-per-inch.

**Halter Dress**
- A Halter Dress is a dress designed like a halter top with the bodice tied or fastened around the neck and usually without a back.

**Halter Top**
- A halter top is a bodice with a high choke, V Shape, or scoop front neckline, or wrap styled neckline and usually without a back.

**Ham**
• A pressing ham, dressmaker's ham, or tailor's ham is a stuffed "ham" shaped tool used for pressing curved areas of the body such as darts, sleeves, princess seams.

**Hand**
• One of the great pleasures of working with fabrics is their feel - their softness to the touch. The way the fabric flows and drapes; and the fabrics' texture are what we call fabric hand.

**Hand Crank Sewing Machine**
• For many years sewing machines had no electric motors to drive their mechanical parts and make the machine work. There were two popular systems used to accomplish this power need: the treadle, and the hand crank.

**Hand Needle**
• Hand Needle is a needle used for hand sewing. Typically the eye of the needle is at the opposite end of the needle from the point. By comparison, sewing machine needles have the eye of the needle just above the point and the opposite end is rounded with a flat side to snugly fit into the needle holder.

**Hand Picked**
• Hand Picked refers to hand stitching that barely shows on the face of the fabric.

**Hand Quilting**
• In ages past, all quilts were sewn with needle and thread by hand. Commonly, once the quilt top and back are ready a fill is inserted between them. The quilt with these three layers is sewn together to form a finished quilt. Hand quilting may include techniques such as tying the quilt in spots to secure it; hand sewing around various blocks, appliqué'; or designs. Many design templates are available to guide hand quilters to sew elaborate designs over the entire quilt.

Hand Quilting Stitch
• How do you quilt a quilt by hand? Using small hand stitches, sew through all three layers (top, fill, and back) of the quilt in a running stitch to form the Hand-Quilting Stitch.

Handbag
• A handbag or purse is both a practical accessory used to carry personal money and other items, it is a key fashion accessory that is often matched with the gown or attire as a fashion statement.

Hand-Baste
• Hand-baste is the technique of temporarily attaching one fabric to another in preparation for final sewing.

Hand Dye
• Hand Dye is a technique for adding color to a fabric by washing the fabric in a dye solution and removing the fabric from the dye.

Handkerchief
• A Handkerchief is a personal accessory (usually a square cloth about 6" to 10") used for wiping tears, blowing nose, other personal purposes, and as a fashion accessory for both men and women. Men often wear a handkerchief in the pocket of their suit as a fashion accessory.

Handkerchief Hem
• Handkerchief Hem is an interesting skirt treatment in which multiple fabric panels extend to tea length ending in individual points at that hem.

Handle or Fabric Handle
• In the study and selection of textiles the qualities of fabric hand constitute an essential method of matching the right fabric, thread, needles, and sewing techniques with the project to insure optimum performance. Each fabric type has different characteristics some have
nap, others do not. Some are very thick; while others are very delicate. Some are stiff, and others are very pliable. Choosing the right fabric is one of the most basic skills the sewer must master. When we discuss the different qualities and characteristics of fabric we call it "handle" or "fabric handle".

**Handloom**
- In the study and selection of textiles the qualities of fabric hand constitute an essential method of matching the right fabric, thread, needles, and sewing techniques with the project to insure optimum performance. Each fabric type has different characteristics some have nap, others do not. Some are very thick; while others are very delicate. Some are stiff, and others are very pliable. Choosing the right fabric is one of the most basic skills the sewer must master. When we discuss the different qualities and characteristics of fabric we call it "handle" or "fabric handle".

**Hand-Overcast**
- Hand overcast is a hand sewing stitch technique used to sew over the edges of the fabric to prevent fraying.

**Hand-Stitching**
- Hand stitching is an ancient art involving hundreds of different stitches and a variety of different needles, threads, and fabrics. For thousands of years the only way to sew was with hand stitching. Today, hand stitching is fast becoming a lost art replaced by the variety of sewing machine stitches.

**Handwheel**
- To the far right of the sewing machine as you face the machine attached to the body of the machine is a round wheel known as the handwheel. In mechanical sewing machines it is often necessary to assist the sewing machine over thick fabrics by rolling the handwheel forward. Avoid rolling the handwheel backward because it will mess up the thread flow.

**Handwork**
- Handwork is any sewing, ripping, or similar work that is done by hand instead of by machine.

**Hang Tags**
- Hang Tags are sales tags attached to items for sale. A hang tag may
only show price or be integrated with additional information. The tag may include barcodes, pricing, fabric content, and other pertinent information.

**Hanging Sleeve**
- How do you hang up a finished quilt? One way to hang quilts is to attach a sleeve or long loop of fabric along the top and back of the quilt through which a decorative pole can slide. The Hanging Sleeve as it is called is often added to quilts and pressed flat allowing the sleeve to be used at a later time while not interfering with other uses of the quilt.

**Handkerchief Linen**
- Handkerchief linen is a lightweight linen fabric used to make handkerchiefs and blouses.

**Handkerchief Style**
- Handkerchief Style is a style characterized by a blouse or skirt hem with jagged edges forming a flowing garment.

**Hankie**
- Hankie is a common slang referring to a handkerchief.

**Hap**
- A Hap is a fabric wrap such as a cape or cloak.

**Hard Hat**
- Construction workers commonly wear hard hats for protection against falling debris, flying materials, and other risk factors associated with a construction site. The hard hat is commonly made of a rigid polymer that resists puncture and provides protection for the head.

**Hardware**
- Hardware is a general term referring to computer central processing unit, keyboard, mouse, digitizer, modem, sewing machine, scanner, etc.

**Harem Pants**
- Harem Pants are a style of pants or slacks that are loose fitting even puffy around the knees, but fit snugly around the ankles.

**Harris Tweed**
- Harris Tweed is a wrinkle resistant hand woven woolen fabric like worsted wool.

**Hat**
- A Hat is an accessory worn on the head for decorative and practical purposes. A hat usually has a brim all the way around a crown (or top). It is often referred to as Headwear.

**Hauberk**
- A Hauberk is a garment of chain mail worn by military knights during the Middle Ages as protection against arrows and other projectiles.

**Haute Couture**
- Haute Couture is a high fashion term reflecting the special annual fashion offerings of day and evening wear for the Ministry For Industry and its Syndical Chamber of Haute Couture in France.

**Havelock**
- A Havelock is a piece of flowing fabric attached to the back of a hat or cap and draped down the shoulders to protect the neck from exposure to sun or wind.

**Haversack**
- A Haversack is a knapsack style bag worn over one shoulder.

**Hawaiian Applique'**
- Hawaiian Applique' is a technique in which large floral designs are sewn onto white fabric backgrounds.

**Hawaiian Shirt**
- A Hawaiian Shirt is a brightly colored loose fitting short-sleeved shirt worn to reflect the celebrated Island life of Hawaii.

**Hazel**
- Hazel is a light brown color with hints of yellow.

**Head**
- Head is jewelry term referring to the prongs that hold a gemstone in place.

**Headband**
• Headband is a strip of fabric worn around the head.

**Heading Tape**

• In the construction of draperies and other window treatments, a heavy stiff fabric is often attached to the top of the drapery for hanging it. This ready-made strip of fabric is known as "heading tape". While technically, it is not tape at all, it does a quick easy job of finishing the top of the drapery making ready to hang. The heading tape comes in several varieties suitable for several different applications. Some are designed for draw strings, triple pleats, pencil pleats, box pleats, or simply pockets for hooks. This is a huge time saver as well as providing a quality drapery finish.

**Headdress**

• Headdress is an fancy head covering like the American Indian headdress of feathers.

**Headpiece**

Headpiece is protective helmet.

**Headwear/Headgear**

• Headwear is a term describing a variety of accessories worn on the head for decorative or practical purposes including, hats, caps, and cloth head wraps.

**Heart Quilt**

• Heart Quilt is a quilt block design in which the heart shape is an integral part of the design.

**Heatn'bond**

• Heat n' Bond® is a popular paper backed fusible web designed to join two layers of fabric together.

**Heart Shaped/ Butterfly Headress**

• Heart Shaped/ Butterfly Headress is a veiled hat with appearance of wings springing from the sides.

**Heat-away**

• Heat-away also known as "burn-away" or "aetz-cloth" is a stabilizer used when wash away or cutaway are not recommended.
**Hectic**
- Hectic is the color or appearance of being flushed or red.

**Heirloom**
- Heirloom is an area of sewing that typically involves decorative threads, entredeux, winged needles, lace, and elegance.

**Heirloom Sewing**
- Heirloom Sewing is an area of sewing that typically involves decorative threads, entredeux, winged needles, lace, and elegance. (Heirloom)

**Heliotrope**
- Heliotrope is the color reddish purple.

**Helm**
- Helm is a type of helmet.

**Hem**
- A Hem is the method of finishing raw edges of a garment or project. There are many different techniques used in hemming including rolled hem and blind hem techniques.

**Hem Allowance**
- Hem Allowance is the width of fabric to be used for stitching and folding the hem for stitching. While most seam allowances range from 1/4" to 5/8th", hem allowances range from 1/8th" to 2" depending on how much fabric is to be folded into the hem.

**Hem Gauge**
- Hem Gauge is also called the Dressmaker's Gauge and consists of a six inch metal ruler with a center pointer (usually plastic) used to measure and set hems.

**Hem Length**
- Hems on skirts and dresses may be various lengths including these traditional ones: Floor, Handkerchief Hem, Intermission, Midi, Mini, Street, or Tea Length.

**Hemline**
- On a skirt the hem at the bottom is called a hemline, however,
whatever garment may be, the hemline is actually the finished edge.

**Hemp**
- Hemp is a durable base fiber from the inner bark of the hemp plant. It is coarse and uses primarily for twine and cords.

**Hera**
- Hera is a wooden tool used to do finger pressing.

**Herringbone or Herringbone Stitch**
- Herringbone is a fabric finish weave where the twill is reversed or broken at regular intervals. The result is what looks like a zig zag stitch, hence it is sometimes called the herringbone stitch.

**Hessian Boot**
- Hessian Boot is a high boot originating with 19th century Hessians.

**Hi Lo**
- A Hi Lo is a gown similar to an intermission length but with the length in front at the intermission level (between knees and ankle) and the back of the gown falling to floor length or longer.

**High Heels**
- High Heels are shoes with high heels.

**Hijab**
- Hijab is modest traditional Muslim attire.

**High-Visibility Clothing**
- High-Visibility Clothing is brightly colored or reflective clothing designed to be quickly and easily noticed.

**Himation**
- Himation is an ancient Greek garment draped over the shoulder.

**Hip Boot**
- Hip Boot is a high hip level boot that is waterproof.

**Hip (Low) Measurement**
- Hip (Low) Measurement is the measurement of your hips. Find your
natural waist, measure down about seven inches, and measure around your hips.

**Hip Measurement**
- Hip Measurement is the measurement of your hips at their widest or largest part.

**Hip Pockets**
- Hip Pockets are surface mounted pockets sewn on the front of the garment at hip level.

**Hiphuggers**
- Hiphuggers are pants that hang low and tight on the hips.

**Hips**
- Hips are the body part from the waist down the legs.

**Hoary**
- Hoary is the color grayish white.

**Hobble Skirt**
- Hobble Skirt is a skirt that is snug at the ankles.

**Holland**
- Holland is a plain weave fabric with a stiff glazed finish for use in book covers, window shades, etc.

**Hollow to Hem Measurement**
- Hollow to Hem Measurement sets the overall length of the dress or gown by measuring from the name of the neck to the finished hemline of the dress adding for additional fullness as required and set at the appropriate angle. When taking this measurement, use the same shoes you will use when you wear the gown.

**Hollywood Waistband**
- Hollywood Waistband is a waistband characterized by a full elastic back and side zipper or button closure.

**Homburg**
- Homburg is a felt hat with center creased crown.
Home Décor
- Home Décor' is a term referring to the field of sewing which includes decorative wall hangings, table decorations, furniture covers, window treatments, and generally any sewing involved with home decorating.

Home Decorating
- Home Décor’ (Home Decorating or Interior Design) is a term referring to the field of sewing which includes decorative wall hangings, table decorations, furniture covers, window treatments, and generally any sewing involved with home decorating.

Home Sewing Machine
- Home Sewing Machine is a sewing machine designed with a wide range of features and application capabilities to be used by a seamstress in the home. By contrast, commercial and industrial sewing equipment is designed for heavy production and usually single use routine applications.

Homespun Fabric
- Originally home Homespun Fabric was hand woven from hand spun yarns, but today Homespun is a loose weave fabric usually in muted tones made of cotton.

Honan
- Honan is a fine plain weave silk (silk look alike synthetic) fabric that responds well to dyeing.

Honeycomb or Honeycomb Stitch
- Honeycomb is a distinct diamond shaped design woven into fabric employing ridges and valleys formed by floating fill threads over warp threads.

Hong Kong Finish
- When you hear Hong Kong Finish, doesn't it make your feel just a little twinge of elegance? This is simply a fancy name for a bias-bound seam. When a seam is wrapped with a bias cut strip of fabric and stitched in place, it is said to bias bound. The bias fabric binds the seam finishing it off and providing a strong seam.

Hood
- Hood is a head covering usually attached to a sweatshirt or jacket.
**Hook**
- When a sewing machine needle pulls the thread under the needle plate the thread lines up neatly against a groove in the front of the needle. As the needle reaches the bottom of its penetration and begins to rise again, a loop of thread forms in the scarf (a cut out portion on the back of the needle just above the needle eye). The hook is a device in the sewing machine that connects with this loop of thread and pulls around the bobbin thread to form a stitch. There are two basic types of hooks: Oscillating and Rotary Hooks. The Oscillating Hook moves left as the needle moves down and then moves right to catch the thread loop as the needle rises. After the oscillating hook wraps the upper thread around the bobbin thread forming a stitch, the hook moves back to the left to repeat the cycle. Rotary Hooks revolve around in a complete circle catching the thread loop behind the needle moving on around to wrap the upper thread around the bobbin thread to form a stitch. The Rotary Hooks continues moving in the same direction around and around.

**Hook-and-Loop Tape**
- The official industry name of velcro is hook-and-loop tape (dots, squares, strips).

**Hooks**
- Hooks are small metal fasteners used with eyes to close blouses, bras, skirts, etc.

**Hooks and Eyes**
- Closures using a small hook on one side of the fabric and a loop made of fabric, thread, or metal on the other side are called hook and eye. These are used on lingerie and dresses.

**Hoop**
- A hoop is a frame devise designed to hold fabric stable while sewing, doing embroidery, or applying needlework.

**Hooping Board**
- Hooping Board is a tool to assist in hooping projects for embroidery.

**Hoopskirt**
- Hoopskirt is a skirt with a hoop (like hoola hoop) to make it bulk outward.
**Hopsacking**
- Hopsacking like burlap is a coarse woven (hopsack or basket weave) cotton or linen fabric used in coats.

**Horizon**
- Horizon is the light source simulating sunrise or sunset from a lightbox.

**Horizontal**
- Horizontal is a term relating to things that are parallel with the ground, even with the horizon, level surfaces like table top, shelf, floor, etc.

**Horizontal Of The Fabric**
- When you look at a fabric print, the horizontal is the sideways view.

**Horsehair**
- A horse's tail or mane is sometime used in interfacing known as horsehair.

**Horsetail Lining Cloth**
- Horsetail Lining Cloth is a soft, flexible, stretchy, and sturdy lining fabric often used in western clothing.

**Hose**
- Hose is a stocking that typically stretches from thigh or waist to the toes of the feet.

**Hosiery**
- Hosiery is a term describing underwear worn on the legs: socks, stockings, pantyhose. Also known as silk hosiery or nylons.

**Housecoat**
- Housecoat is a long lightweight dress like robe for working around the home.

**Housedress**
- Housedress is a simple housecoat.

**Houndstooth Check**
- Houndstooth Check is a woven design in which a broken twill design
utilizing at least two different colored yarns produces a pattern of interlocking checks.

**HPI**
- HPI is an abbreviation for holes per inch. The more holes per square inch you have, the finer the fabric is.

**HTSUS**
- HTSUS is an abbreviation for the Harmonized Tariff Schedule of the United States which is a system of import tax duties controlled by the U.S. International Trade Commission.

**Huarache**
- Huarache is a low sandal with upper supports of leather.

**Huckaback**
- Huckaback is towel fabric characterized by absorbancy and durable.

**Hug Me Tight**
- Hug Me Tight is sleeveless close-fitting jackets.

**Humeral Veil**
- Humeral Veil is clerical vestment that covers the hands while holding sacred vessels.

**Hunter Green**
- Hunter Green is the color dark yellow green.

**Huskavarna**
- Huskavarna is a sewing machine company from Sweden offering a wide range of sewing machines. For many years the company marketed under the name Viking, but now the company only markets the Huskavarna brand.

**Hydrofil**
- Hydrofil is a lining fabric often used in outerwear because of its smooth finish and its ability to keep the wearer dry and comfortable by resisting moisture.

**Hydrophilic Fibers**
- Hydrophilic Fibers absorb water easily. As a result they dry slower than
other fabrics, and may require more pressing.

**Hydrophobic Fibers**
- Hydrophobic Fibers are fibers that do not easily absorb water.

**Hypo-allergenic**
- Hypo-allergenic is fabric that has been treated to make it less likely to cause an allergic reaction.

---

**TERMS & DEFINITIONS**

**I**

**Ice Skate**
- An ice skate is a show with a blade mounted under it for skating across the ice.

**Ice-cream**
- Ice-cream is a color reminiscent of vanilla ice-cream.

**ICP**
- ICP is the abbreviation for Industry Communications Platform
representing thousands of people who use the internet for business activities.

Ikat
- Ikat is a tie dyed yarn that is then woven into fabric.

Illusion
- Illusion is an open mesh fabric used in veils, wedding gowns, and various eveningwear known for its transparent quality. It originated in France, and is commonly made of silk. The term is also used to refer to necklines covered with netting. Illusion is sometimes called net or netting.

Illusion Bodice
- Illusion Bodice is a sheer material bodice that gives the illusion that there is no bodice at all.

Illusion Sleeve
- Illusion Sleeve is a sheer material sleeve that gives the illusion that there is no sleeve at all.

In Seam Pocket
- A pocket that is placed in the seam of a garment is called an in seam pocket.

Incarnadine
- Incarnadine is a reddish pink color like blushing skin.

Inclusion
- Inclusion Flaws within a diamond or gemstone. They may be seen either with the naked eye or under magnification.

Indian Redi
- Indian Redi is a color of reddish brown.

Indigo
- Indigo is a dark gray blue color derived from the appearance of one of the oldest natural dyes - natural indigo.

Inkle
- Inkle is a trimming tape or braid made of colored linen on a narrow
loom.

**Inseam**
- The inseam is the seam inside the pant leg from the crotch to the hem.

**Inside Sleeve Measurement**
- Inside Sleeve Measurement Start the tape in your armpit and measure your straight arm to the wrist.

**Integrated Hang Tag**
- A Hang Tag is a pricing ticket hung on a for sale item. When the hand tag includes other pertinent information such as fabric content, UPC, washing instructions, etc. it is called an integrated hang tag.

**Interface**
**Interface is the fabric used as interfacing.**

**Interfacing**
- Often fabric just a little something extra to help it maintain a desired shape, its stability, and help it look and stay crisp. A special type of fabric known as interfacing is used to provide this added something. This added fabric helps the finished garment wear longer and look better. You will find interfacing in cuffs, pockets, collars, along shoulders of jackets, and elsewhere. Interfacing comes in two forms: sew-on and iron-on.

**Interlining**
- Have you noticed how cold it can get in Chicago or Buffalo in the winter time? A single layer of fabric can cover the body, but it takes much more to keep warm when the wind is blowing 30 miles an hour and the thermometer stops moving at five degrees below zero. The solution is often the coat within the coat or an extra warm fabric under the garment added as a lining. Simply, interlining is an added fabric for warmth or insulation, and attached as lining. Skirts, pants, shirts, jackets, and many other garments can provide added warmth with the addition of interlining.

**Interlock Knits**
• Interlock knits are fabrics in which rib stitches (like two fabrics) interlock to produce heavier, thicker, more stable fabric (double knit) than single knit fabrics.

**Intermission Length**
• A gown with a hem between the knees and ankle are called intermission length.

**Intersecting Seam**
• Intersecting Seam is the point where two or more seams (lines of stitching) cross each other.

**Interverness**
• Interverness is a coat with fitted round collar, belt, and the flow of a cape.

**In The Ditch**
• In the Ditch is a sewing technique in which the sewer sews a seam in the well or crack formed when another seam has already been sewn on the opposite of the fabric. The result is a seam that is all but invisible.

**Invisible Stitching**
• How can you sew an invisible stitch? The technique for sewing an invisible stitch is to hide the stitching in the well of a seam. This is common on applique and binding applications where the had sewer uses small stitches along the edge. It can also be done by machine along folded over seams.

**Invisible Thread**
• Try to imagine sewing with a thread that you can't see. This may conjure up images of Rumplestiltskin or the Emperors Fine Clothes, but invisible thread is a little more practical. Whenever you need to sew something, but don't want the intrusion of an ordinary thread topstitched across your creation, try invisible thread. This is a clear plastic filament that is strong and works great. Once sewing it literally appears to disappear. Using invisible thread in the bobbin enables you to sew with virtually any color without worry of the occasional dot of a different color appearing in your stitchline.

**Invisible Zipper**
• Invisible Zipper is a zipper that is designed to be sewn in a seam making it unnoticeable.
Iron
- For hundreds of years, a piece of metal heated on the stove or fire and used to press clothing was called an iron. Today, the electric steam iron does the same job with much greater ease and convenience.

Iron Gray
- Iron Gray is a color that is greenish gray.

Iron Shine
- Iron shine is a visible evidence of scorching, or damage to fabric caused by pressing with an iron. Use of a pressing cloth will help prevent iron shine.

Ironing
- Ironing is the practice of using an iron to press fabrics - also known as pressing.

Ironing Board
- Ironing Board is a flat surface used for pressing fabrics or clothing with an iron. Most ironing boards fold up for easy storage.

Ironing Press
- Ironing Press is a special piece of equipment used to press fabrics and clothing consisting of an upper and lower panel pressing surfaces. Pull the lever and the two ironing surfaces press from top and bottom to give a firm pressing.

Iron-on Patches
- Iron-on Patches are pieces of fabric with heat activated adhesive on one side. A common application is on blue jean knees where the patch is laid on top of a hole or rip in the blue jeans and press with a hot iron.

Isocord Thread
- Isocord Thread is a high quality 100% polyester embroidery thread.

Ivory
- Ivory is a color descriptive of a blend between white and yellow.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

**J**

**Jabot**
- Jabot is a fall or drop of fabric which may include drapery jabots that fall to the side, lace down the center of a dress or blouse, or similar applications.

**Jackboot**
- Jackboot is a shoe made of leather with an upper portion that rises above the knee and is historically worn by continental soldiers.

**Jacket**
- A Jacket is a lightweight coat that is designed to be less bulky, shorter, and more convenient than a coat. It is made with sleeves, pockets, collar, and a front that opens.

**Jaconet**
- Jaconet is similar to batiste a fine sheer cotton fabric often used in children's summer clothing. Jaconet is bandage cloth or lightweight cotton.

**Jacquard**
- A Jacquard is a special attachment on a weaving machine that enables individual control over needles and patterns. The Jacquard system is capable of producing large designs. Brocade and Damask are types of Jacquard fabrics.

**Jade Green**
- Jade Green is a color that is actually a light bluish green.
Jambeau
- Jambeau is a lower leg piece of armor worn by Knits.

Janome
- Janome is the largest manufacturer in the world making its own great line of sewing machines plus making machines for dozens of other companies who put their own logos on them. Janome is Japanese company.

Jasmine
- Jasmine is a color that is light yellow.

Jasper
- Jasper is color that is blackish green.

Jay
- Jay is a color that is moderate blue.

Jean Jumper
- Jean jumper is another name for the Jean-a-ma-jig™ which is a tool used to keep the presser foot level while sewing over seams on jeans.

Jean-a-ma-jig™
- If you have ever sewn on denim and especially over a thick denim seam, you may have broken a needle or two. The Jean-a-ma-jig™ is a plastic tool designed to ease over thick seams while sewing with a sewing machine. The Jean-a-ma-jig™ slides under the presser foot to provide a level sewing field eliminating broken needles and maintaining a quality stitch.

Jeans
- Jeans is the popular name for denim (cotton twill) pants.

Jerkin
- Jerkin is a sleeveless waist length snug fitting jacket.
Jersey

- Jersey fabric is a fabric with smooth, flat face, and texture produced using a Jersey Stitch which is a basic knitting stitch which maintains precise and consistent interlooping stitches.

Jersey Stitch

- The Jersey Stitch is a basic machine knitting stitch which forms identical loops consistently. It may be called a plain stitch, felt stitch, or a stockinet stitch.

Jet

- Jet is a color that is very black.

Jewel Neck

- A Jewel Neck is a neckline that is high and round at the base of the neck encircling the base of the neck much like a string of pearls might encircle the neck.

Jiffy Grip™

- This is a handy fabric with little bumps on it to prevent sliding. It is commonly used on children's sleep wear under the feet. Jiffy Grip™ is the brand name.

Jigger

- On a double breasted suit a button is mounted inside the overlap of the jacket to fasten the jacket for a smooth flat appearance. This button often with a long shank is called a Jigger.

Jinny Beyer

- Jinny Beyer is a well known quilt artist famous for her 3D designs and use of border prints.

Jock strap

- A Jock strap is a type of athletic supporter worn my men and boys to protect their private parts from injury.

Jockstraps

- Jockstraps are men's undergarments worn for athletic support.

Johnny

- A Johnny is a hospital gown characterized by its short sleeved dress
like garment with no collar which closes in the back instead of the front.

**Jones**
- Jones is the brand name of one of the great sewing machine manufacturers of the 1800’s rivaling Singer with treadle and hand crank machines.

**Jump Suit**
- A Jump Suit is a one piece pant shirt combination often worn by people who jump out of airplanes.

**Jumper**
- A Jumper is a loose one piece over dress or blouse that is often worn over other clothing, but may be worn by itself.

**Junior Petite**
- Junior Petite is a sizing classification for small teenage girls.

**Jute**
- Jute is an Indian fiber used for gunny sacks, bags, cords, and carpet threads.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

K

Kaffiyeh
- A Kaffiyeh is an Arabian "hat" made of folded cloth and cord and worn on the head.

Kaleidoscope Design
- Kaleidoscope Design is a quilting design reminiscent of a child’s kaleidoscope with blocks formed with four equilateral triangles pointed to the center and the bases of the triangles forming triangular corners on the block.

Kameez
- Kameez is an Indian knee length tunic styled garment worn over pants or skirt.

Kangaroo Pocket
- A Kangaroo Pocket is a piece of fabric sewn on the front of a garment top and bottom, but open on each end.

Kapa
- Kapa is Hawaiian cloth made of tree bark dyed and processed.

Kapok
- Kapok is a fiber taken from the Bombocaceae Tree. It is light weight and resists moisture. It is commonly used for cushions, mattresses, and life jackets.

Karat (K)
- Karat (K) is a term defining the quality and character of gold 10K, 14K, 18K, 24K gold. Lesser quality jewelry will often blend nickel or other metals with the gold for added strength since gold is a very soft metal.

Kaross
- Kaross is an African piece of clothing made of animal skins.
Kelvin
- Kelvin (K) is a system of measuring temperature like Celsius or Fahrenheit but representing a much colder point of reference.

Kemp
- Kemp is woolen fiber that is coarse and usually blended with other wools.

Kendal Green
- Kendal Green is green wool fabric like homespun.

Kepi
- A Kepi is a military cap with flat top and visor commonly worn by officers and on dress occasions.

Kerchief
- Kerchief refers to handkerchief a common accessory used for personal purposes.

Kersey
- Kersey is a heavy (poor quality) ribbed woolen used for work clothes, uniforms, and coats.

Kerseymere
- Kerseymere is a fancy twill woolen cloth.

Keyhole Buttonhole
- Keyhole Buttonholes are button holes sewn in a design where the top is rounded and the bottom is squared forming a shape reminiscent of traditional key holes.

Keyhole
- Keyhole This term refers to a tear-drop shaped opening (or keyhole) below a Jewel Neckline.

Keyhole Neck
- A Keyhole Neck is a round or tear shaped cutout that attaches to the neckline in front or back.
**Keystone**
- Keystone is a business term referring to the amount of markup assigned to a product at wholesale or retail. Keystone will vary greatly based on many different factors, but generally: Custom products are Keystoned at 500% or higher; Retail Sewing Machines Keystone at 75% to 100%; Various other retail items may Keystone at 100% to 400%. Generally, products that require large amounts of customer service and support must be taken into consideration when setting prices in order to cover those additional service costs. For example, if someone purchased a Bernina 730 top of the line sewing/embroidery machine at full MSRP the dealer would have a Keystone of 90% However, the dealer incurs an additional $650 in cost to provide classes, support, and warranty repair services. Thus when you calculate the actual Keystone for the sewing machine it is closer to 50%. To calculate the amount of keystone, subtract the actual dealer cost from the total price and divide the difference by the cost times 100. Example: Price $100. Cost $50. 100-50=50 50/50X100= 100% Keystone. Price $500. Cost $50 500-50=450 450/50X100=900%

**Khaddar**
- Khaddar is Indian cotton cloth.

**Khaki**
- Khaki is a yellowish brown color associated with fabric used for uniforms.

**Kid Glove**
- Kid Gloves are fancy dress gloves made of soft "kid" leather.

**Kilt**
- Kilt is the Scottish knee length pleated skirt.

**Kiltie**
- Kiltie is a long tongued oxford styled shoe in which the tongue folds back over the shoe.

**Kimono**
- A Kimono is a long robe with large flowing sleeves and worn with wide sash.
Kimono Sleeve
- Kimono Sleeve describes large flowing sleeves which are part of a Kimono.

Kirtle
- A kirtle is a long dress.

Knee Breeches
- Knee Breeches are better known as knee length shorts.

Kneelength
- Kneelength skirts have a hemline that strikes at the center of the knee.

Knee Lift Lever
- Many sewing machines have special hands free systems to control the presser foot. The knee lift lever is a lever that attaches to the front of the sewing machine and stretches down to the sewer's knee. When the sewer presses against the lever, the presser foot lifts up off the fabric. This can also be achieved by lifting the regular presser foot lever attached at the read of the sewing machine head just behind the needle and presser foot.

Kneesock
- Kneesocks are socks or stockings that are knee length.

Knickerbockers
- Knickerbockers are shorts or short pants that provide a full fit at the hips but gather just below the knees.

Knickers
- Knickers is another name for knickerbockers which are shorts or short pants that provide a full fit at the hips but gather just below the knees.

Knit de Knit
- Knit-de-Knit is a yarn that is crinkled. It is produced by texturizing the yarn through a crimping process knitted into fabric and then heat set. The yarn is unraveled from the fabric leaving the final crinkled yarn.
Knit Fabric Structure

- Knit Fabric Structure is fabric made knitted interlocking Yarn.

Knitting

- Knitting is the process of making fabric with ridges or wales that run lengthwise while courses run crosswise.

Knitwear

- Knitwear is a general term referring to any type of clothing made of knit fabric.

Knock-off

- A knock-off is a copy of adaptation of a ready-made garment or other item. Knock-offs of expensive high fashion garments can make less expensive versions available at lesser expense.

Koulots

- Koulots are full fitting pants that look like a skirt and may have a front panel accentuating the skirt appearance.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Lab Dip
- Lab Dip is a fabric processed in color fabric dye to meet specific color standards.

Labels
- Quilts are often sewn as gifts or created as keepsakes. To certify who the quilter was, who received the quilt, when it was started, when it was finished, and other pertinent information are attached to the back of the quilt on a fabric label. The label may have the information printed, typed, or embroidered on it.

Lace
- Lace is a special trim fabric usually made of open thread design. Lace is a delicate thread creation that appears largely without fabric foundation such as: Alençon, Appliqué, Battenburg, Chantilly Lace, Dotted Swiss, and Guipure Lace.

Lacha
- A Lacha is a traditional Indian garment consisting of a long skirt.

Lake
- Lake is a color of vivid red.

Lambrequin
- Lambrequin is a knight's helmet scarf or covering.
**Lamb's Wool**
- Lamb's Wool is wool clipped from a sheep up to eight months old. The wool is characterized as a fine grade, soft, slippery, and resilient.

**Lame'**
- Lame' is a fabric in which flat silver or gold metal threads are used to create either the design or background of the fabric.

**Laminated Fabric**
- Laminated Fabric is multilayered fabric that has been bonded into a single fabric.

**Lap Quilting**
- Lap quilting refers to a process of hand quilting one block at a time using small lap frames. The quilt is then assembled from the collection of blocks once finished.

**Lapel**
- A Lapel is a decorative fold of fabric along the front of a jacket.

**Lapped Seam**
- Lapped Seam is a seam with a folded over seam beneath.
Lapped Zipper
  • Lapped Zipper is a zipper installed with a folded over fabric covering from one side.
**Larrigan**
- Larrigan is a leather moccasin (oil-tanned) with a topper reaching up to the knee.

**Lashing**
- The stitches that hold the lining and facings together in a jacket are called lashing.

**Lasting**
- Lasting is a sturdy cotton fabric used for shoes and luggage.

**Latchet**
- Latchet is a shoe or scandal fastener made of a narrow leather strap.

**Lattice Strips**
- Lattice Strips are also called sashing.

**Laurel**
- Laurel is a vine plant used to form a victor's crown or wreath for olympians.

**Lavalava**
- Lavalava is a Polynesian kilt styled skirt made of cotton print.
Lawn
- Lawn is a fine semi-crisp cotton or linen fabric used in underlining, heirloom dresses, and blouses.

Layering/Layer
- How do you layer a quilt? Lay out the backing wrong side up. Cover the backing with the batting or fill material. Cover the batting with the quilt top face side up. Once the layers are ready, they may be basted, quilted, and finished.

Layout
- Layout is the process of taking a pattern and transferring it to fabric for cut out and sewing.

Leaden
- Leaden is a dull gray color.

Leather
- Leather is a natural "fabric" made of animal skin especially cattle.

Leatherette
- Leatherette is a fake leather made of coated fabric to simulate leather like vinyl. It is often used for upholstery.

Lederhosen
- Lederhosen is a Bavarian leather shorts often with suspenders.

Leg of Mutton Sleeve
- A Leg of Mutton Sleeve (gigot sleeve) is a loose fitting full sleeve flowing from the shoulder to just below the elbow and then tapered to the arm (may come to a point) also known as Gigot.

Leg Warmer
- Leg Warmer is a term that describes knitted leg coverings designed to provide warmth against exposure to cold.

Legging
- The term Legging refers to leg coverings made of leather or cloth.
Leghorn
- Leghorn is an Italian wheat or straw hat.

Legs of Dart
- A dart is composed of two lines of stitching narrowing to a point. These are called the legs of the dart.

Lei
- Lei is a neck lace of flowers or wreath of leaves such as bestowed upon guests to Hawaii.

Leisure Suit
- Leisure Suit is an informal suit consisting of slacks and a shirt styled jacket.

Lemon
- Lemon is the color of lemon or pale yellow.

Lengha
- The traditional Indian long skirt is called a lengha. It is commonly worn with the Indian Choli, a blouse.

Length
- Length is the measurement of how long something is such as a ruler which is 12", a yardstick 36", or other measurement.

Lengthwise Grain
- The weave of the fabric is constructed of threads running lengthwise and crosswise. The weave is called grain of the fabric. More specifically when reference is made to grainline or line of the grain it is actually referring to the lengthwise weave or lengthwise grain. If the fabric is properly manufactured, the lengthwise grain will run parallel to the selvage or outer edge of the fabric. This is the strongest part of the fabric and stretches the least. It may also be called the warp of the fabric, Lengthwise grain, Grain, Grainline, and the lengthwise of the grain. The weave of the fabric (grain) parallel to the selvage running lengthwise through the fabric is the lengthwise of the grain.

Lengthwise of the Grain
- Warp of the fabric, Lengthwise grain, Grain, Grainline, and the
lengthwise of the grain all mean the same thing. The weave of the fabric (grain) parallel to the selvage running lengthwise through the fabric is the lengthwise of the grain.

**Leno Weave**
- Leno Weave or Gauze Weave is a durable sheer fabric often used for sheer curtains because of its light airy characteristics.

**Leotard**
- A Leotard is a snug fitting one piece stretchy garment also known as "tights" and worn by dancers and gymnasts.

**Lettuce Edging**
- Lettuce Edging is a decorative treatment along the edge of a garment in which the fabric itself is gathered.

**Lexan**
- Lexan is a hard, usually clear, plastic type substance that is shatterproof and is sometimes used like acrylic for various rulers and tools.

**Liberty**
- Liberty Ltd. Of England are well known for their hand printed floral prints on silk, rayon, cotton, and wool.

**Liberty Cap**
- Liberty Cap is a French snug fitting cone shaped cap worn during the 1800’s as a sign of freedom.

**Life Jacket**
- Life Jacket is a flotation device worn as vest.
Life Vest
• Life Vest is a flotation device worn like a jacket.

Light Colors
• Light Colors are those colors that are most reflective of the light spectrum and include white, yellow, light green, light blue, and pink.

Ligne
• Ligne is a French term used by Europeans to describe the size of a button. One inch equals 25.5 millimeters. 25.5 meters equals 11 French ligne or 40 English ligne.

Lilac
• Lilac is the color medium purple.

Line of Demarcation
• This phrase is used widely to describe various dividing lines (where one part and ends and another begins) in patterns, layout, and measurement. For example, to fit a dress measurements are taken of a woman's ribcage. Specifically, just under the breast at the "infra-mammary crease line" is measured along what is called the line of demarcation between the chest and breast. Cut lines are sometimes referred to as lines of demarcation such as those needed to fit garments with neck, armholes, and sleeve panels. This term is also used to describe the point where major changes are made as in changing a pattern from its original design to something different.

Linear Quilting
• Linear Quilting is fastening multiple layers of fabric together in straight lines with straight line sewing.

Linen Fabric
• Linen is one of the oldest fabrics. It is made from the stem fibers of flax. Linen fibers are characterizes as very cool, absorbent, stronger than cotton, and finish to a fine luster. Linen is often blended with other fibers to prevent wrinkle.

Lingerie
• Lingerie describes women's underwear often frilly and decorative.
Lingerie Shears
- Lingerie shears are special scissors designed to easily cut the thin delicate lingerie fabrics.

Lingerie Sheers
- Lingerie Sheers is a term describing the ultra thin and delicate fabrics used for lingerie.

Lingerie Thread
- Lingerie Thread is a stretchy braided thread ideal for machine embroidery and embroidery. It is often used as bobbin thread.

Lining
- Lining is a fabric used to finish garment insides covering seams, making it easier to put on or take off the garments. Lining is made of slick fabric that slides on and off.

Linsey-Woolsey
- Linsey-wooley is sturdy linen or cotton fabric.

Liquid Fusible Web
- Fabric glue comes in a variety of names: Liqui Fuse™, or Liquid Fusible Web™.

Liquid Stabilizer
- Stabilizer stabilizes fabric buttonholes, applique', and other techniques, but later the stabilizer can be washed away because it dissolves in water.

Liripipe
- Liripipe is a scarf.

Lisle
- Lisle is twisted long fiber cotton thread.

Liver
- Liver is the color reddish brown sometimes described as liver brown or liver maroon.
Liverish
- Liverish is the color hew reddish brown.

Livery
- Livery is the uniform or distinctive clothing identifying workers or servants.

Livid
- Livid is the color reddish.

Loafer
- Loafer is a low step-in shoe.

Lockram
- Lockram is a plain woven linen.

Lockstitch
- How do you sew a lockstitch? Hand sew in one place several times to anchor the stitch forming a lockstitch. The same is accomplished on a sewing machine by back stitching before sewing a seam.

Loden Cloth
- Loden cloth is a wool fabric known for its water repelling qualities which are important for use in coats. The original fabric is thick and has an oily green appearance.

Loft
- Loft means thickness and relates to the thickness of batting. High loft is thicker and fluffier than low loft.

Log Cabin
- The Log Cabin design consists of a square fabric center surrounded by strips of fabric called logs to form the quilt block. Traditionally the center square was red to symbolize the family fireplace inside the cabin. Depending on how the fabric are laid out around the center square designs known as Court House Steps, Straight Furrow, and Barn Raising. Log Cabins were usually tied because it was hard to quilt through so many seams.

Log Cabin Ruler
• The Log Cabin ruler is a marvelous tool to help make cutting the fabric strips quick and easy. The ruler is strong transparent acrylic clearly marked for the quilter.

**Loincloth**
• Loincloth is a fabric used to cover private parts.

**Long Arm Quilter**
• How can you quilt a Queen or King size quilt? The solution is the Long Arm Quilting Machine mounted on a Long Arm Quilt Frame. There are a variety of models available, but they all do essentially the same thing. The special sewing machine is designed with a very wide sewing area. The quilt backing is laid out and rolled onto part of the frame. The batting is also rolled out and attached, and the quilt top the same. The three are gradually layered by rolling them on to the sewing area where the sewing machine following a predetermined pattern quilts the layers together. The traditional long arm quilters (used mostly by professionals) with frame require lots of space to operate up to sixteen feel long by five feet wide. Recently, slightly smaller and less expensive home versions have become available that require a little less space and can use a standard sewing machine.

**Long Johns**
• Long Johns is a slang term referring to warm long underwear.

**Long Underwear/Long Johns**
• Long Underwear is usually warm thick underwear made in two pieces worn during cold weather.

**Long-fibre or Long-staple**
• Long-Fiber or Long-Staple are term referring to fibers that are at least three inches long used to twist and process into threads.

**Long-fibre Polyester**
• Long-fibre polyester thread and long-staple polyester thread are the same super strong, shiny, synthetic thread using long filaments to make the thread.

**Long-staple Polyester Thread**
• Among the strongest and shiniest threads available today is the high quality long-staple polyester thread. It is constructed of
long polyester thread filaments as long as six inches long. Polyester is a petroleum synthetic product and is almost indestructible. It can be used anywhere you need strong beautiful thread: clothing, embroidery, crafting, etc.

**Loom**
- A loom is a machine designed to manufacture woven fabrics.

**Loop Fold**
- Loop Fold is a type of label produced by folding over the label fabric to protect against fray.

**Loop Shade Tape**
- Roman shades, balloon window treatments, and other drapery projects use loop shade tape to make the window treatments work. These tapes include features such as loops, plastic rings, pleating features, shirring, smocking, and box pleat folding tapes.

**Loop Turner**
- Loop turner is a tool used to turn fabric tubes inside out or right side out.

**Lounger**
- Lounger is a garment worn for leisure.

**Loupe**
- Loupe Pronounced "loop." is a jewelers magnifying eyepiece used to examine gemstones.

**Loungewear**
- Loungewear are garments designed for informal wear.

**LTL**
- LTL is the abbreviation for Less Than Load or referring to packaging that is not completely full.

**Low Hip**
- Hip (Low) Measurement is the measurement of your hips. Find your natural waist, measure down about seven inches, and measure around your hips.
**Lower Looper**
- Lower looper is the bottom sewing finger of a serger.

**Lubricant**
- Lubricant is a chemical treatment such as grease or oil used to provide mechanical ease and fluid movement of metal machinery parts.

**Lurex**
- Lurex is a metallic yarn.

**Luster**
- Luster is a fabric finish with mixed cotton warp and wool fill.

**Luteous**
- Luteous is the color yellow green brown.

**Lutestring**
- Lutestring is a plain shiny silk.

**Lyocell**
- Lyocell is a rayon type fiber made from wood pulp.

**Lyart**
- Lyart is fabric with gray streaks.

**Lycra**
- Lycra is a brand of synthetic spandex or stretchy fiber.

**Lyocell Fiber**
- Lyocell Fiber is a synthetic fiber like rayon, but stronger and more durable. It is characterized by minimal shrinking, wrinkle resistant, luster, and rich color.

**Lyon Lace**
- Lyon Lace is a fine delicate thread lace made of very thin cord that looks like Alencon but is much lighter.

**Lyons Velvet**
- Lyons Velvet is a fabric with thick stiff pile.
 TERMS & DEFINITIONS

M

Machine Embroidery
- Machine embroidery is the art of decorating fabric and hence projects with decorative threads applied using a computerized sewing system. Free Motion Embroidery is the sewing using straight, zig zag, and satin stitches to embellish fabric by moving the fabric by hand (no feed dogs).

Machine Quilting
- Joining the multiple layers of a quilt including top, back, and filler by using a sewing machine is called machine quilting. Quilters may use standard home sewing machines on smaller quilts, or use a machine quilt frame to use a home sewing machine, or long arm quilt machine on a large quilt frame.

Machine Tie
- How do you tie a quilt? Quilts are not all the same. While many are quilted with long arm quilting machines, perhaps the oldest way to finish a quilt was simply to use string, cord, or yarn to tie the quilt together in several places over the surface of the quilt.

Machine-baste
- Machine-baste is the technique of temporarily attaching or sewing using a sewing machine two or more fabrics together in preparation for finish sewing.

Machine-sewn
- Hand sewing has been around for thousands of years, but sewing with sewing machines is a fairly recent advent (Elias Howe
invented the first practical sewing machine 1846). When a garment or project is sewn using a sewing machine it is said to be machine sewn.

**Mackinaw**
- Mackinaw is a heavily felted and napped wool used for blankets and winter sportswear.

**Mackintosh**
- Mackintosh is a lightweight rubberized cotton used for raincoats.

**Macrame'**
- Macrame' is fringe or coarse lace designed in a geometrical patterns.

**Madder**
- Madder is a color of deep red.

**Madiera**
- Madiera is a brand of sewing thread.

**Madison House Design**
- Madison House Design is a quilt block design in which small houses are made by using squares, rectangles, and triangles to highlight the houses.

**Madras**
- Madras is a fine hand woven cotton produced in India and dyed with natural dyes.

**Magenta**
- Magenta is a purple red color.

**Magnetic Seam Guide**
- This is a handy gadgit. Place it on the throat plate of your sewing machine and set it to your preferred position, and "Whalla!" You have a great stitching guide to help keep your seams straight and even. Note you must have a metallic surface to attach the magnetic seam guide, but most machines have a similar
attachment available. Note: Ask your sewing machine dealer about using the magnetic seam guide on any high end computerized sewing machine just be sure it won't create a problem with the electronics.

**Mahogany**
- Mahogany is the color of reddish brown.

**Maillot**
- A Maillot is a one piece woman's bathing suit.

**Malines**
- Malines is a stiff silk or rayon mesh fabric often used for veils.

**Mandarin Collar**
- A Mandarin Collar is a collar commonly associated with Asian Apparel. It is a short stand up collar.

**Mandarin Slit**
- Mandarin Slit is a slit or opening in a skirt or dress that comes high up on the left leg or center front of the skirt.

**Manta**
- Manta is southwestern styled blanket worn as a cloak or shawl.

**Manteau**
- Manteau is a loose fitting robe often worn as a cloak or coat.

**Mantelet**
- Mantelet is a short cape.

**Mantilla**
- Mantilla Is a Spanish scarf worn over the head and shoulders which may include a short cape. Mantilla A very traditional headpiece/veil style. Usually a lace bordered, one-tier veiling that is "laid" across the head. Mantillas are available in any length, but most are at least Waltz length.

**Mantle**
- Mantle is a loose fitting sleeveless cloak worn over other clothes.
Mantua
- Mantua is an 18th century loose fitting gown.

Manual Tension
- Manual Tension is a spring loaded set of discs controlled by a manual knob to increase or decrease thread resistance to apply tension to the upper thread.

Marabou
- Marabou is a silk fabric made of marabou silk.

Markdown
- Markdown is a term that describes price reductions or price discounts.

Marker
- Market is an arrangement of pattern pieces for cutting.

Marking
- Marking is the process of temporarily marking the fabric for placement, pattern layout, hooping, or other application.

Marocain
- Marocain is a ribbed crepe fabric.

Maroon
- Maroon is the color of dark red.

Marquisette
- Marquisette is lightweight sheer fabric often with design dots or spots.

Marseilles
- Marseilles is a fabric like pique' made of cotton.

Mask
- Mask is a disguise that covers the face.

Masking Tape
- Masking Tape is a special paper tape that is used for masking or
covering and marking. It is used because once used the tape can be easily removed without leaving permanent marks.

**Masterworks Design Software**
- Masterworks is an digitizing embroidery design software capable of multiple format editing, but primarily designed for pes. Format. It is marketed exclusively through Baby Lock sewing machine dealers.

**Matelasse**
- Matelasse is a combination fabric with crepe and ordinary yarn interfaced in the warp that looks like it is quilted. The combination produces a raised pattern of puckers across the fabric after washing. The fabric may use cotton, silk, or wool fibers.

**Material Utilization**
- Material Utilization is the amount or percentage of fabric used in a given project. The remaining unused fabric is scrap.

**Mauve**
- Mauve is the color of reddish purple which may be described as violet or lilac.

**Maxi**
- Maxi is a term referring to full length garment (skirt, dress, coat) as compared to Mini which refers to very short dress or skirt.

**Measurement**
- Measurement is a term defining the process of identifying length, width, height, depth, volume, weight, and density. The most common systems of measurement are the SAE or the American System and the Metric system which is used throughout most of the remainder of the world.

**Measurement System Metric**
- The metric measurement system is the world's system of measurement including milliliters, centimeters, meters, liters, etc.

**Measurement System SAE**
• Measurement system SAE is the American system of measurement including such measures as inches, feet, yards, pints, quarts, and gallons.

Meander Quilting
• Meander Quilting is a style of quilting that is achieved by free motion with no crossing lines.

Mechlin
• Mechlin is a delicate lace.

Melighton
• Melighton is a short napped heavy wool.

Melton fabric
• Melton fabric is a heavy wool fabric.

Mechanical Machine
• Mechanical Machine is a sewing machine whose stitches are made by the movement of levers and gears without electronic controls or computerized operations. Mechanical Machines tend to be noisier, less reliable, sew rougher, and are prone to more mechanical service needs than Electronic and Computerized machines.

Medallion Quilt
• How do you sew a Medallion Quilt? Begin your block with a central design feature or motif. Then surround the "Medallion" with multiple borders to frame the motif.

Medici Wool
• Medici Wool is a fine French wool with smooth finish (finer than Crewel or Paterna wools).

Mediera Thread
• Mediera is a company brand of threads especially embroidery threads.

Melton fabric
• Melton is woven wool or wool blend used for coats because of its
density and weight.

**Memory Quilt**
- How do you make a Memory Quilt? First, collect your treasured memories: scraps of clothing, various mementoes, and treasured photographs. Next, create quilt blocks using those items. Fabric scraps can be used to form designs in many different ways. Many mementoes can be fastened to a block with thread, string, or cord. Photographs may be transferred to photo cloth and quilted like any other fabric. Finally, once you have all the memory items included in block form or selected for sashing or border use, assemble the quilt much like a crazy quilt. Remember, these are your memories.

**Mend/Mending**
- Mending is the act of repairing a problem with a garment. It may involve darning a hole. It may involve repairing a tear, split, or other problem.

**Men's Wear**
- Menswear is the collective assortment of men's clothing.

**Mercerization**
- Mercerization is a treatment process used on cotton yarn (treat with caustic soda followed by neutralizing acid wash) to produce fiber swell for increased luster, strength, and response to dyes.

**Mercerized Thread**
- Mercerized Thread is thread that has been treated to increase its luster, strength, and response to dyes.

**Mercerized Cotton Covered Polyester**
- Mercerized cotton covered polyester thread is one of the most common sewing threads, however, it is often a problematic thread. Made like cotton candy, the tiny fibers of spun polyester are formed into a thread and then wrapped in mercerized cotton. This technique makes a thread that is rich in color. Due to the short polyester fibers, it tends to be a weak thread. It may collect fuzzes between the tension discs and in the needle eye. For best sewing, use a better thread. For the least important projects, cotton covered polyester or mercerized cotton poly threads are acceptable.
**Merino Fabric**
- Merino sheep produce a high quality wool especially in Italy. Fabric produced from these sheep is known as Merino Fabric.

**Merle**
- Merle is the color bluish red gray.

**Mermaid**
- Mermaid is a style of skirt which hugs the body until it reaches the knees and flares in dramatic fashion also called Trumpet Skirt.

**Merry Widow**
- Merry Widow is a corset made with garters but without straps.

**Mesh**
- Mesh is a net like soft elastic woven fabric (may also be made by knitting, crocheting, or knotting) used for sportswear and evening wear.

**Messaline**
- Messaline is a dress fabric characterized by its satin weave, light weight, and softness.

**Mess Jacket**
- Mess Jacket is a man's dress uniform jacket also known as a monkey jacket.

**Metamerism**
- Metamerism is coloration which does not remain consistent in all lighting situations.

**Metafil Needle**
- Metafil Needle is a needle with extra long eye used to apply decorative metallic threads.

**Metal Sewing Gauge**
- If you are going to sew, you need this tool. It looks and is simple and easy to use. The gauge is actually a six inch ruler with a sliding plastic pointer that helps you keep all your sewing even.
and measured. Use it to measure and set your seams and hems almost every time you sew.

**Metallic Fiber**
- Metallic Fibers are manufactured fibers made from metals, minerals, and blended fibers covering. It is a flat ribbon coated with a protective layer of plastic. It is most commonly used for decorative sewing.

**Metallic Thread**
- Metallic Thread is thread made from Metallic Fibers derived from minerals and metals. It is most commonly used for decorative sewing.

**Metric Measurement**
- Across most of the world measurements are taken using a scientific measuring system known as the metric system. The metric system employs millimeters, centimeters, and meters. See the conversion chart below to compare SAE and Metric Measurement.

**Mettler Thread**
- Mettler is a brand of high quality threads including long fiber Metrosene threads, machine quilting cotton thread, polysheen, hand quilting threads, etc.

**Microfiber**
- Microfibers are synthetic fibers made to be ultra-fine, light weight, and durable. Microfibers include acrylic, nylon, polyester, and rayon microfibers. Microfiber Fabrics are very light (less than 1.0 denier) and produce fabric that is soft, flowing, and has a gentle drape. Comparisons: 2X finer than Silk, 3X finer than cotton, 8X finer than wool.

**Micromini**
- Micromini is an extremely short miniskirt.

**Microtex Needle**
- Microtex Needle is a very sharp pointed sewing machine needle used with tightly woven fabrics.
Middy
- Middy is a children's or woman's blouse characterized by a sailor's collar.

Midi
- Midi is a mid-calf skirt, dress, or coat with its name taken from the mid calf.

Midnight Blue
- Midnight Blue is the color blackish blue.

Midriff
- Midriff is a garment that exposes the stomach area.

Milky
- Milky is the color of creamy white like milk.

Millinery
- Millinery is a term referring to women's hats.

Miniature Quilt
- A Medallion Miniature Quilt is a replica and scale version of a larger quilt. The original quilt may be King Size, and the Medallion Quilt scaled down to Lap Quilt Size or other scaling.

Mini
- Mini or Mini Skirt is a skirt whose hem falls above the knees.

Mini-skirt
- Mini is a term that refers to skirt or dress that is very short.

Mini Group
- Mini Group is a small quilt guild.

Miniver
- Miniver is a luscious white fur historically worn by nobility of the Middle Ages.

Mirror-image
- Mirror-image is a term referring to graphics that are copied and
pasted as though seen through a mirror (reversed).

**Miter**
- In woodwork when making a picture frame two pieces of trim are set at ninety degrees to each other (perpendicular) and the adjoining corners of the two pieces of wood are cut to make a perfect ninety degree angle (45 degrees off opposite sides of the frame pieces). This joint is said to be mitered and making this joint is to miter the pieces. In the same way cutting a diagonal fold at the corner of two fabric strips is called "miter". There are mitered corners of various angles 45 degrees, 60 degrees, 90 degrees, 120 degrees, and 130 degrees. The applications of mitered corners include borders and bindings. The ninety degree mitered corner is composed of two forty five degree angles. Mitering is the process of seaming or folding fabric diagonally.

**Mitered Bindings**
- How do you miter quilt bindings? To finish a quilt the raw edged need to be covered. A common way to do this is to apply binding (a strip of fabric) first sewn along one edge right side down, then folded over to sew right side down creating an envelope around the raw edges of the quilt. As you approach the corners of the quilt, fold the two bindings so that you have two intersecting forty five degree angles to form a right angle around the corner. Fold the fabric under to provide a finished edge in the angle and stitch.

**Mitered Border**
- Borders especially in quilting may meet each other and simply butt up against each other, but often the opposing border pieces are laid perpendicular to each other and the corners cut on forty five degree angles to form a completed ninety degree corner. This is called a mitered border or a mitered corner.

**Mitered Corners**
- When two pieces of fabric are joined together to form a ninety degree angle (usually with two forty five degree opposing angles), it is said to be a mitered corner.

**Miterfold Labels**
- Miterfold Labels are garment labels designed to support the
garment on a hanger.

**Mitering**
- Cutting the ends of two strips of fabric on forty five degree angles and joining them together to form a ninety or other degree angle is called mitering.

**Mitt**
- Mitt is a protective covering for the hand that lacks fingers, it may also refer to the baseball mitt.

**Mitten**
- Mitten is a Mitt used to protect covering the hand lacks fingers.

**Mixture**
- Mixture is fabric made with a variety of colors and threads.

**Moccasin**
- Moccasin is a soft American Indian leather shoe.

**Mocha**
- Mocha is the color dark or chocolate brown.

**Mock Flap**
- Mock Flap is a type of pocket flap without a pocket – just for show.

**Mock French Seam**
- Like the French Seam sew two fabrics wrong side together with about 1/4" seam allowance. Then fold the seam allowances in upon themselves so that instead of the raw edge being exposed, you see two folded edges of the fabric. Then edge stitch the folded over seam. Now turn the fabric inside out with right sides exposed and you see no top stitching but an encased "mock-French seam").

**Mock-overlock Stitch**
- Mock-overlock Stitch is a look alike stitch emulating the overlock or serger stitch on a home sewing machine by sewing at or off the edge of the fabric.
**Modacrylic Fiber**
- Modacrylic Fibers are synthetic fibers similar to acrylic.

**Modal**
- Modal is a type of fabric with softness, flexible draping, and comfort.

**Moderate Stretch Knit**
- Knit fabric vary in the amount of stretch they have. Some patterns will use very stretchy knits, but some patterns may be labeled "Moderate Stretch Knits Only".

**Mohair**
- Angora goat hair is used to produce Mohair a fine wool used for coats, suits, and sweaters.

**Moire'**
- During the finishing process one popular finish is the Moire' finish which looks like a wave pattern on the surface.

**Moisture**
- Moisture is the amount of water, dampness, or wetness which may be on the surface or contained inside of something such as moisture in the air or in fabric.

**Moisture Regain**
- Moisture Regain is the measure of moisture absorption of a given fabric measured under a relative humidity of 65% and 70 degrees Fahrenheit. It is expressed as % of dry weight.

**Moisture Transport**
- Moisture Transport is the movement of water within a fabric caused by electrostatic action, chemical action, or capillary action.

**Mola**
- Mola is a small piece or panel of appliquéd fabric (made with reverse-applique' techniques) full of color to decorate clothing, furniture, or homes originally made in Central America.
Moleskin
- Moleskin is a cotton fabric designed to be highly durable and strong.

Momme
- Momme is a Japanese measurement of silk weight.

Monk's Cloth
- Monk's Cloth is a course heavy cotton fabric with a loose basket weave. Like canvass it is used for draperies, slipcovers, and upholstery.

Monkey Jacket
- Monkey Jacket is a man's dress uniform jacket also known as a Mess Jacket.

Monofilament
- Mono means one. Filament means length of fiber. Therefore monofilament is a single strand of a given fiber. Thread is a common end product of monofilament production.

Monogram
- Monogram is lettering or initials embroidered for personal design features.

Monotone Fabrics
- Monotone Fabric is fabric that is a single color.

Montero
- Montero is a cap worn by hunters with warm ear flaps.

Moquette
- Moquette is velvety upholstery fabric.

Moreen
- Moreen is strong wool fabric.

Morion
- Morion is a visorless helmet.
Mortar Board
- Mortar Board is a flat square headpiece worn as an academic cap.

Moss Crepe
- Moss Crepe fabric with a mossy appearance.

Moss Green
- Moss Green is the color of medium yellow green.

Motif
- A motif is a design. The term is frequently used in quilting and embroidery to describe design elements.

Mother Hubbard
- Mother Hubbard is taken from Old Mother Hubbard fable and used to describe a loose fitting shapeless dress.

Motley
- Motley is wool fabric with mixed colors.

Mousseline
- Mousseline is muslin like fabric that is very fine and sheer.

Mousseline de soie
- Mousseline de soie is a silk fabric with a crisp finish.

Mousy
- Mousy is the color gray brown.

Mozzetta
- Mozzetta is a short cape.

Muff
- Muff is a hand covering to keep hands warm in cold weather.

Muffler
- Muffler is a neck scarf.
Mukluk
- Mukluk is an Eskimo boot made of soft leather.

Mulberry
- Mulberry is the color purple black.

Mule
- Mule is a shoe with a heel strap.

Mull
- Mull is a fabric made of cotton, silk, or rayon that is characterized by sheer softness.

Musette
- Musette is a knapsack with one shoulder strap.

Mustard
- Mustard is the color is a medium yellow.

Muslin
- Muslin is a firm ordinary undyed cotton fabric (available bleached or unbleached). It is often used for project testing, quilt background fabric, or quilt foundation to give increased stability to other fabrics.

Mystery Quilt
- Mystery Quilt is a quilt pattern that is designed for the quilter to proceed step by step until the end before seeing the final appearance of the finished quilt.
 TERMS & DEFINITIONS

N

Nacre Velvet
  • Nacre Velvet is multicolored velvet fabric with varying colors following the pile and reverse.

Nainsook
  • Infants clothing, blouses, and lingerie are often made of Nainsook (a lightweight woven cotton muslin fabric).

Nankeen
  • Nankeen is a Chinese fabric made of durable brownish yellow cotton.

Nap
  • The noticeable texture of fabric which is in someway raised, fuzzy, or contoured on its surface is called nap. Some fabrics change their appearance depending on the way you look at them. Be sure to follow the pattern instruction on how the nap should lie and how it should be sewn. This surface may include raised designs, a hairy texture in the fabric, a fluffy surface, the pile of knits, and one-way designs. Some fabrics are simply flat and have no discernable nap, while other fabrics like fur, flannel, suede, and corduroy have obvious nap surfaces. Fabrics with pile nap including velveteen, velour, and corduroy feel smoother and color is brighter when the nap is going down and darker when going up. The nap wears better when the nap is going down. Fuzzy-surfaced fabrics like flannel and fake fur should be cut with the nap running down. Shiny fabrics such as satin, damask, and knits reflect the light differently when viewed from different directions. It is important for such fabrics to lay the same direction. Plaids and stripes need the added care of aligning the plaids and stripes.

Napa
  • Napa is like leather but very soft and thin used wherever a lightweight leather would be desirable.
Nape to Waist
- Nape to Waist Measurement is the measurement from the back to the waistline.

Napery
- Napery is a common table linen or household linen.

Napkins
- A Napkin is cloth like a kerchief used to clean up messy foods or to clean hands during a meal.

Narrow Hem
- Fabric edge is funneled through the special rolled hem presser foot to sew a pretty narrow hem also known as narrow-rolled hem or rolled hem.

Narrow-rolled Hem
- A special rolled hem presser foot is used to evenly roll the fabric edge over on itself while the fabric is being stitched. The fabric is funneled into the front of the presser foot and comes out behind in a pretty narrow rolled over hem perfect for many sewing projects. The narrow-rolled hem may also be called simply "rolled hem" or "narrow hem".

National Costume/National Dress
- National Costume is attire or clothing worn reflective of a specific geographical region.

Native Regalia
- Native Regalia refers to the animal skins worn in Indian Dance.

Natural
- Natural is the color of off-white or beige.

Natural Dyes
- Natural Dyes are dyes or color treatments derived from plants and animals.

Natural Fibers
- Natural Fibers are fibers made from vegetable or grain crops such
as cotton and flax linens.

Natural Waist
- Natural Waist is a waistband (seam) that follows the natural curvature of the body.

Natural Waist Measurement
- Natural Waist Measurement is the measurement around the waist at the smallest portion usually about an inch above the belly button.

Naugahyde
- Naugahyde ® is a special vinyl covered fabric that is water resistant.

Navy
- Navy is the color of a rich dark grayish purple blue -- Navy Blue.

Neckerchief
- Neckerchief is a handkerchief design to be worn around the neck. Traditional Cowboy garb includes neckerchief.

Necktie
- Necktie is a decorative accessory worn by men around the neck and tied in the front.

Neckline
- Neckline is the finished portion of a garment (shirt, blouse, dress) around the neck. There are several traditional neckline styles: Bateau, Bertha Collar, Décolletage, Elizabethan Collar, Halter, Illusion, Jewel, Keyhole, Portrait, Queen Anne, Sabrina, Neck, Scoop, Square Neck, Sweetheart, and Wedding-Band Collar.

Neckwear
- Neckwear is a term that refers to ties, scarves, and other accessories worn around the neck.

Needle
- Needle is a device used to guide thread through fabric layers, to form stitches, and bring the thread out again. Hand sewing needles usually have eye of the needle at the opposite end of the
needle from the point. Sewing machine needle eyes are located just above the point. The sewing machine needle usually has a flat side and a rounded side. On the rounded side there is a small groove that stretches all the way to the eye of the needle. On the flat side of the needle there is a portion of the backside cutout just above the needle eye called the scarf. The scarf is where a loop of thread gathers as the sewing machine needle rises upward from the bottom of its movement. The hood picks up this thread loop to form a stitch.

**Needle Clamp**
- The Needle Clamp is a device mounted at the bottom of the needle bar to hold the needle.

**Needle Clamp Screw**
- The Needle Clamp screw is a device to hold the needle clamp and needle in place.

**Needle Grabber**
- When hand sewing or hand stitching, the needle is often difficult to pull through dense fabric. Needle Grabbers are rubber grips that help pull them out.

**Needle Plate**
- The metal place immediately under the sewing machine needle where the needle goes down into the bobbin are is called the needle plate. It comes in straight stitch configuration for straight stitching only, and in zig zag configurations for a wide range of other stitches. The straight stitch needle plate helps improve the quality of straight stitching, but is only recommended if you are going to be doing a large amount of straight stitching. Many sewing machines allow you to easily trade back and forth between the needle plates.

**Needle Punching**
- How do you prevent a quilt from shifting during hand quilting? Stick a needle in it. That is essentially what you do in needling or needle punching. Insert a needle through the quilt layers to stabilize it during hand quilting. It also helps the batting keep its loft.

**Needle Sizing**
• Needle Sizing is a term describing the standard sizes of needles: two systems are common including European system with such numbers as 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 and corresponding American system of 8, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16,

**Needle Turn**
• Needle Turn is an applique technique in which a seam allowance turned under by the needle as the applique is being sewn in place.

**Needle Threader**
• Needle threaders are devices used to make threading needles easier. Modern sewing machines have very effective needle threaders that make sewing easier. Portable threaders are also handy for hand sewers.

**Needle Up/Down**
• On most quality sewing machines today a small button known as the needle up/down button controls the position of the needle. If you sewing along and you stop with the needle in its up position, it is easy to drop the needle back to its lower position at the touch of a button. This makes pivoting easy and without complications.

**Needleboard**
• When it comes to pressing velvet, fur, or other heavily napped fabrics, this gadget is essential. It looks like a piece of wood with tiny pins or nails sticking up. It is not an ancient torture tool or bizarre discipline paddle. Take the heavily piled fabric and lay it face down on the needleboard. The needles will gently slide into the fabric enabling you to press from the back side of the fabric. The result is wonderful and the fabric comes out plush and fluffy gorgeous.

**Needlepoint**
• Needlepoint is a term for hand embroidery, tapestry work, or lace work using a needle often over a paper pattern.

**Needles**
• The needle is the most important part of a sewing machine and the most important tool in the hand of a hand sewer. There are many kinds of needles some for knitting, some for crochet, some
for hand sewing, and some for the sewing machine. Hand sewing needles include sharp needles (medium long for general stitching); Embroidery needles (known as crewel needles have longer eyes for easier threading); Shorter needles (are used for fine detail,); Milliner needles (longer needles for basting); Calyx-eyed needles (sharps that open at the top for easy threading.). Specialty hand sewing needles include Beading Needles, Tapestry Needles, Chenille Needles, Clover Needles, Darning Needles, and Yarn Darning Needles. Machine Needles include Universal Needles, Sharp Needles, Ball-point Needles, Wedge Needles, and Twin Needles. See illustration for the common parts of a sewing machine needle.

**Needlework**
- Needlework is a general term referring to creative arts using needle, thread or yarn, and fabric. The term includes: Bargello, Crewel, Crocheting, Embroidering, Knitting, Macrame', Needlepoint, Rugmaking, Tatting, and hand sewing.

**Negligee**
- Negligee is a sensual garment worn like pajamas but made as a long flowing sheer dressing gown.

**Nehru Jacket**
- Nehru Jacket is a jacket characterized by it lack of lapels and collar. It named after Indian Prime Minister Jawaharial Nehru.

**Neoprene**
- Neoprene an oil-resistant synthetic rubber used in weather-resistant products, adhesives, shoe soles, and sportswear.

**Net**
- Net is a mesh like fabric made by connecting intersecting yarns producing a fabric suitable for veils, curtains, and fishnet. Net is a fabric that is thin and full of tiny holes like a super fine fishing net which is used over other garments as an embellishment or for veils and veiling accessories. Net is also called Illusion.

**Network**
- Network is interconnectivity between computer elements such as computer, scanner, and embroidery machine.
Neutral Colors
• Neutral Colors(black, white, silver, gray, and brown

Newmarket
• Newmarket is a 19th century long snug fitting coat.

Nightcap
• Nightcap is a fabric head covering worn as part of nightclothes to keep the head worn.

Nightclothes
• Nightclothes are clothes worn during sleep. It may also be called sleep clothes. It may include pajamas, nightshirts, nightcaps, etc.

Nightdress
• A Nightdress is a nightgown.

Nightgown
• Nightgown is a dress designed to be worn at night while sleeping.

Nightie
• A Nightie is a dress worn at night.

Nightshirt
• A Nightshirt is sleepwear designed like a shirt with an extra long tail.

Nile Green
• Nile Green is the color of yellow green.

Nine Patch
• How do you make a Nine Patch Quilt? Begin by creating Nine Patch Blocks and assemble the quilt. To make a Nine Patch Block create a design of nine pieces or units in a three by three grid (3 row high and 3 columns wide).

Ninety-Degree Angle
• Ninety-Degree Angle is a mitered corner formed with two 45
degree angles for a right angle in a square corner.

**Ninon**
- Ninon is a crisp lightweight woven silk or manufactured fiber with an open mesh suitable for eveningwear and curtains.

**No-Fray**
- No-Fray is a liquid product used to stop fabric edges from fraying.

**Noil**
- Noil is a left over fiber with short filaments that is collected after fibers are combed. Noil is sometimes spun into short fiber yarns.

**Non-Directional Fabric**
- Many printed fabrics have designed that are clearly layed out in one direction and therefore described as directional fabrics, however, many printed designs are the same all over without regard to direction. These printed fabrics are called non-directional fabrics.

**Nonroll Elastic**
- Nonroll Elastic is special elastic designed for waistbands that remains flat instead of rolling.

**Nonskid Fabric**
- Nonskid fabric is a special fabric designed to resist slipping and sliding. Brand: Safe-Tred.

**Non-Woven Fabric**
- Many fabrics have obvious grain lines where the threads have been woven together, but other fabrics such as suede, felt, interfacings, and leather have no weave and are therefore described as "non-woven fabric". Woven fabrics are produced by converting fibers to yarns and weaving them together. Non woven fabrics may be produced by bonding layers together with adhesive, fusing with heat, or fusing with chemical processing.

**Norfolk Jacket**
- Norfolk Jacket is a belted jacket characterized by its loose fit and box pleats.
Nosepiece
- A Nosepiece is a protective guard worn as part of a knight's helmet.

Notch
- Older sewing patterns had notches marked on them, but today patterns have tabs marked to edges. Cutting notches into the fabric seam allowances is not a good idea because it may weaken the seam and even leave holes in the finished product if you are not careful. Tabs or notches they are still called notches. A recommended technique is to very carefully snip the edge of the fabric aligned with the notch on the pattern. The clip should be no more than one half inch long and preferable shorter. This clip will serve as a marker when assembling the garment.

Notched Collar
- A Notched Collar is a two pieced open collar that cannot be closed.

Notions
- Sewing and quilting notions include just about everything you can imagine to help make your sewing easier, more enjoyable, and more professional looking. These include threads, scissors, rotary cutters, mats, patterns, templates, pins, needles, and about anything else you can think of (except sewing machines and fabric). So when you take a notion to start a sewing or quilting project be sure you have all the "notions" you need to do the job quick and easy.

Novelty Print
- Novel means new or different. A fabric that is printed with (usually small) unique, whimsical, holiday, or crafty designs is called a Novelty Print.

Nubby
- Nubby means lumpy, nubbed, or knobby and relates to yarns or fabrics with a rough lumpy surface.

Nut-Brown
- Nut-brown is the color of brown like you might find on a brown nut.

Nylon
• Nylon is the first synthetic fiber invented (1938). It is characterized by resilience, strength, and flexibility.

**Nylon Tape**
• Nylon Tape is a two sided tape used for seaming.

**Nylon Tricot**
• Nylon Tricot is a popular lining for slips, knits, and bathing suits.

**Nytril**
• Nytril is a synthetic fiber often blended with other fibers to minimize shrinkage and improve retention of garment shape.
 TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Obi
- Obi is a Japanese kimono belt which is actually a broad fabric sash.

Ocher
- Ocher is the color of yellow.

Off The Shoulder Neck
- Off the Shoulder Neck is a neckline lying gently across the top of the bustline with uncovered shoulders or see through sheer yoke (net or organza) attached to the collar.

Off White
- Off-white is the color of yellow or grey white, sometimes described as dirty white.

Off-Grain
- Off grain is a term that refers to fabric that is not cut or does not lie along the true lengthwise of the grain. Some fabrics are flawed in manufacture by the warp of the fabric slanting off to the side instead of running true along the length of the fabric.

Oilcloth
- Oilcloth is a slippery waterproof fabric achieved by oil-coating vinyl, cotton, silk, or other fabric to create the waterproof surface.

Oilskin
- Oilskin is a waterproof cloth treated with oils to make it resist moisture in such garments as a raincoat or other raingear.

Old Gold
- Old Gold is the color of dark yellow.
Old Rose
- Old Rose is the color of grayish red, but it often has varying shades.

Olefin
- Olefin, polyolefin, or polypropylene is a synthetic fiber characterized by light weight, strength, resistance to abrasion, and moisture transportation. Uses include rope, indoor/outdoor carpets, lawn furniture, and upholstery.

Olfa blades
- Olfa is a company well known for manufacturing rotary cutters. Olfa blades are replacement blades for the cutter.

Olfa Cutter
- The Olfa Cutter is a rotary cutter with handle used to cut fabrics.

Olive
- Olive is the color of yellow green characteristic of unripe olives.

Olive Drab
- Olive Drab is a grayish yellow green (olive) colored uniform fabric usually made of wool or cotton.

On Point
- When quilt blocks are turned so that they appear to stand on their 45 degree angles, it is said to be on point.

One Patch
- A One Patch is a quilt pattern with only one shaped patch in the design.

One Way Design
- One Way Design is a fabric with printed design that looks right only if looked at in one direction.

On-Grain
- On-grain indicates that the fabric or pattern lies in line with the lengthwise of the grain.
Opaque
- Opaque is a term that means no light can penetrate. When making draperies designers use black out lining to make the draperies opaque preventing light from entering the room through the drapery.

Open Collar
- An open collar is a collar that does not have a front closure such as on a button down shirt that has its top button unbuttoned.

Open Lay
- Open lay is a single layer of the fabric achieved when the fabric is unrolled and laid flat across its entire width one lay thick only.

Open Seam
- Open seam is a seam in which the seam allowances are separated and pressed flat leaving the seam open. A closed seam would involve the seam allowances being pressed together and laid to one side as in quilt piecing.

Opera
- Opera is a top hat that pops up and/or collapses.

Orange
- Orange is the color blend of red and yellow.

Orangish
- Orangish is an adjective referring to color blends close to orange.

Orchid
- Orchid is the color of light purple.

Organdy
- Organdy is a sheer cotton fabric with a fine crisp feel.

Organza
• This is a useful underlining fabric, but does not drape well and tend to stick to other garments.

**Organzine**
• Organzine is a fine fabric with raw silk yarn.

**Orlon**
• Orlon is an acrylic fiber brand.

**Orphrey**
• Orphrey is decorative border fabric used on church garments.

**Orvus**
• Orvus is a washing solution used to clean quilts. Do not use on Bubble Jet Set quilts or labels.

**Oscillating Hook**
• As the needle brings thread down through the needle plate and then begins its travel backup a loop is formed on the back side of the needle. An oscillating hook travels behind the needle grabbing the thread through the loop and dragging it half way around the bobbin where it loops around the bobbin thread and is pulled taught to form a stitch. The oscillating hook then travels back to grab the next loop from the next time the needle comes down and travels back up. Back and forth the hook oscillates.

**Osnaburg**
• Osnaburg is a heavyweight coarse fabric made of cotton or cotton/poly blend. It is used for bags and sacks.

**OTC**
• OTC is the abbreviation for over the counter.

**Ottoman**
• Ottoman is a woven ribbed fabric used for coats, suits, dresses, upholstery, and draperies.
**Outer Border**
- When a quilt has more than one border, the ones closed to the middle of the quilt are called inner borders, but the final border that encases the quilt is called the outer border.

**Outercoat**
- Outercoat is a term used to differentiate coats worn on top of clothing in contrast to under coats.

**Outerwear**
- Outerwear is a class of garments worn outside.

**Outfit**
- An Outfit is the composite of clothing worn as a set at one time, which may include regular clothing and accessories. An outfit is usually worn for special events.

**Outing Flannel**
- Outing Flannel is a cloth made of wool of the texture of flannel.

**Outline Quilting**
- How do I do outline quilting? Lay out your quilt with all three layers prepared set for quilting. Look over the quilt and visually identify the figures, patterns, or designs on it. Begin stitching (commonly using a straight stitch, but decorative stitches may also be used) around the outside edge or outline of the appliqué', printed design, or other features you have selected. Result: Outline Quilting.

**Outside**
- Outside is the opposite of inside. It is the part of the fabric that is seen when the garment is worn. It is also called the good side or top side.

**Outside Sleeve**
- Outside Sleeve Measurement is the measurement from the top of the shoulder to the wrist (double check both arms).

**Overall**
- Overall are work clothes often worn on top of other clothing (overall) to protect them while the wearer is working.
**Overblouse**
- Overblouse is a snug fitting shirt worn belted or untucked.

**Overcast**
- Overcasting or overstitching is stitches that sew over the edge of a fabric to prevent fraying. This is also called overlocking, over edging, and serging.

**Overcoat**
- An Overcoat is a warm coat usually designed as a formal coat over other clothing worn for indoor activities.

**Overgarment**
- Overgarment is another name for an overcoat.

**Overhead Costs**
- Overhead Costs are costs that are required to do business including rents, utilities, equipment costs, etc., but not including the cost of supplies or raw materials.

**Overlock**
- Overlock or overcast is a stitch used to keep fabric from fraying. Sewing machines accomplish this with zig zag, satin, and blanket stitches. A sewing machine specializing in overcasting stitches is the serger which has often been referred to as an overlock machine. A serger overcasts, seams, and trims all in one pass at about twice the speed of a standard sewing machine.
- Overlock or Serger is a special type of sewing machine designed to seam, finish, and trim all in one pass usually stitching at two to three times the normal speed of a home sewing machine.

**Overplaid**
- Overplaid is a multi layered fabric with a plaid pattern over another plaid or background.

**Overshirt**
- Overshirt is a shirt worn over another shirt usually un-tucked.

**Overshoe**
- Overshoe is a protective shoe covering like galoshes which protect against mud and water.
**Overskirt**
- An overskirt is a skirt worn over another.

**Oxblood**
- Oxblood is a color of reddish brown.

**Oxford**
- Oxford is a laced shoe.

**Oxford Cloth**
- Oxford Cloth is a cotton fabric composed of twice as many threads in the warp as in the weft producing a basket weave design.

**Oyster/Oyster Shell**
- Oyster is a grayish white color.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Pack
- A Pack is a fabric bag worn on the back. It is also known as a packsack or backpack or nap sack.

Pad Stitching
- Pad Stitching is the technique of sewing small stitches through interfacing barely catching the outside fabric to provide shape for collars and lapels.

Padding
- Padding is a soft sometimes smooshy material (often foam, felt, or similar material) used to provide added comfort such as in chair cushion padding, protection such as knee pads or bumper pads, stuffing as in padded bras, or to give shape as in shoulder padding of a suit.

Paduasoy
- Paduasoy is a silk fabric with distinctive cording surface. Paduasoy may also refer to a garment made with cloth of the same name.

Paisley
- Paisley is a fancy printed pattern on fabric used in men's ties, blouses, and dresses.

Pajamas
- Pajamas are loose fitting shirt and pants worn as sleepwear or loungewear.

Pallette
- Pallette is a term referring to protective armor-wear covering the armpits.

Pallette Design Software
- Pallette Design Software is a software used to digitize graphics for embroidery stitching and editing of embroidery designs. This
software is closely associated with a similar software sold under the name of PE Design.

**Pallium**
- Panama is hat made of straw and leaves.

**Panama**

**Panne' Satin**
- Panne' Satin is a high gloss satin fabric.

**Panne' Velvet**
- Panne' Velvet is a stable knit fabric with a unidirectional velvet pile that gives a shiny appearance.

**Pannier**
- Pannier is a full draped overskirt.

**Panoly**
- Panoly is a suit of armor.

**Pantalets**
- Pantalets are undergarments worn under dresses to keep the legs warm.

**Pantaloons**
- Pantaloons are pants some with snug fit, some loose fitting.

**Pantdress**
- Pandress is a divided skirt garment like koulots.

**Pantie**
- Panties are undergarments worn over the crotch portion of the body by women.

**Pantie Girdle**
- Pantie Girdle is an undergarment designed to reduce the appearance of flab around the tummy and hips also covering the crotch area.

**Pantofle**
• Pantofle is a soft shoe slipper.

**Pants**
• Pants (Trousers, Slacks) is a garment design to cover the legs from ankles to waist.

**Pantsuit**
• Pantsuit is an ensemble of pants and long jacket.

**Pantogram**
• Pantogram is a pattern that is followed to make a copy such as long arm quilter following a grid pattern to sew the same design again and again.

**Pantyhose**
• Pantyhose are one piece stretchy stockings that include panty crotch coverage.

**Pantywaist**
• Pantywaist is a buttoned undergarment worn by girls.

**Paper Foundation Piecing**
• How do you do paper foundation piecing? Lay out the preprinted paper pattern or template. Cut the needed fabric pieces. Stitch the pieces to the paper in the prescribed order. The paper serves as an intricate guide for the piecing process and as foundation for the complicated design.

**Paper Piecing**
• Paper piecing is an abbreviated reference to the same technique as paper foundation piecing.

**Paper Scissors**
• Paper scissors are scissors used to cut paper and paper products. In contrast, fabric scissors are scissors only used to cut fabric. If
fabric scissors are used to cut paper, it will ruin the scissor for use on fabrics, but the scissor will still do a fine job on paper.

**Paper Stitching**
- Paper stitching is sewing on paper. This practice may include practice sewing drills on paper, sewing on paper foundation for scrapbooking, and similar applications.

**Paper Taffeta**
- Paper Taffeta is a crisp lightweight fabric with paper like finish.

**Parabola**
- Parabola is a geometric term relating to the intersection of a plane with a fixed or parallel point as in a sewing machine the needle must move up swing precisely along the designed curved plain and descend precisely back into the needle plate as intended. Any variation in the parabola, and the stitches will be distorted, ill formed, or not form at all. Your sewing machine mechanic will make appropriate adjustments when he services your sewing machine.

**Parallel**
- Parallel is a term meaning that one line runs along side another without intersecting.

**Parallelogram**
- Parallelogram is a geometric term a "quadrilateral" or four sided object having both opposite sides parallel to each other. A square and a rectangle are both parallelograms with right angles and two sets of parallel sides, but many parallelograms have different angles other than the ninety degree right angle. Quilters often use parallelograms in designing their quilt tops. Special rulers help measure and make each piece just right so everything works together.

**Paris Green**
- Paris Green is the color yellow green.

**Pareu**
- Pareu is a wraparound skirt.
**Parfleche**
- Parfleche rough leather treated with water and lye to produce a hairless fabric used for robes.

**Parkas**
- Parkas is a heavy hooded jacket worn in very cold weather. Also known as Anorak.

**Partial Backing**
- Backing is fabric sewn to the back of a project. Typically, a quilt is fully backed with a layer of equal size to the quilt tip. However, jackets are often backed only in high stress areas therefore are said to have partial backing.

**Partlet**
- Partlet is a collar style reminescent of the 16th century.

**Pashmina**
- Pashmina also known as Cashmere is a super soft wool.

**Patch**
- A patch is a shape cut out of fabric. Used alone as a One Patch or in combination with different patches, the fabric shape is used to make quilt blocks.
- Patch is self contained, finished edged, embroidery design to be sewn onto a garment.

**Patch Pocket**
- Patch Pocket are pockets attached on the outside of a shirt or jacket.

**Patches**
- In garment alterations and repair is common to attach a piece of cloth over a hole as a patch. This is especially common on blue jeans.

**Patchwork**
- Patchwork or piecework takes many small pieces of fabric and sews them into blocks in the process of making a quilt.
**Patent Leather**
- Patent Leather is leather with a special hard smooth shiny coating hardened to the surface of the leather. It sews like vinyl, but use a leather needle to avoid tearing.

**Patten**
- Patten is a high mud walking clog or shoe.

**Pattern**
- Any project guide whether to construct a quilt block, a jacket, or a dress; usually printed on paper or similar materials is called a pattern. Patterns may be referred to as templates (usually made of more durable material like plastic or a metal) or designs (for more specific items such as a block design).

**Pattern Design System**
- Pattern Design System (PDS) is a term relating to computer aided pattern design.

**Pattern Envelope**
- Many patterns are folded and placed in paper envelopes and therefore are called pattern envelopes.

**Pattern Layout**
- Pattern Layout or the process of using the pattern to layout the fabric for cutting varies significantly from one pattern to another. Always pay very close attention to the Pattern Layout Instructions on the Pattern.

**Pattern Markings**
- Published patterns have a variety of lines, arrows, symbols, and instructions printed on the pattern which are collectively known as Pattern Markings.

**Pattern Matching**
- Pattern Matching is the process of lining up stripes, checks, plaids, and other linear patterns.
Pattern Tracing Paper
- Do-sew and other materials are used to trace off copies of the pattern before using it to sew out the project.

Pattern Weights
- Small weights are used to hold patterns and fabric in place during layout and cutting. This is an alternative to basting and/or pinning.

Pattern-Stay
- Pattern-Sta™ is a spray adhesive for use with fabrics.

Pauldron
- Pauldron is a piece of shoulder armor.

PDM System
- PDM is an abbreviation for Product Data Management System.

Peacock Blue
- Peacock Blue is the color green blue.

Pea Green
- Pea Green is the color medium yellow green.

Peach
- Peach is the color medium yellowish pink.

Pea Jacket
- Pea Jacket is a sailor's heave double-breasted jacket.

Pearl
- Pearl is the color neutral blue medium gray.

Pearl Gray
- Pearl Gray is the color pale blue.

Pebble Effect
- Pebble Effect is rough pebbled fabric.

Pearl Crown Rayon
• Pearl Crown Rayon is a rayon thread similar to pearl cotton characterized by bright colors and used for decorative stitching.

**Pearl Crown Rayon Thread**
• Pearl Crown Rayon Thread is a rayon thread similar to pearl cotton characterized by bright colors and used for decorative stitching.

**Pearls 'n Piping Foot**
• Pearls 'n Piping Foot is a special sewing machine or serger presser foot used to apply strands of pearls onto fabric.

**Peasant Top**
• Peasant Top is a loose fitting blouse with low neckline, ruffles, and general free flowing.

**Peau De Sole**
• Peau De Sole is silk with a soft satin finish.

**Pedal Pushers**
• Pedal Pushers are pants that are cut off at mid calf.

**Peek-a-boo**
• Peek-a-boo is a portion of a garment which is cut out to reveal skin.

**Pelisse'**
• Pelisse' is a long coat.

**Peg Top**
• Peg Top are a style of pants.

**Peignoir**
• Peignoir is a loose negligee.

**Pelerine**
• Pelerine is a fur cloak or coat.

**Peplos**
• Peplos is an Ancient Greek shawl.
**Pellon Wonder Under**
- Pellon Wonder Under is an adhesive for use in applique’ work. Pellon is the name of the manufacturer.

**Pencil Skirt**
- A Column Skirt or Straight Skirt or Pencil Skirt is a skirt without a flare or fullness at the hem or waistline.

**Pencil-Pleat Tape**
- Pencil-Pleat Tape is a pre sewn fabric tape used in the making of draperies in order to assure properly positioned pleats.

**Penny Loafers**
- Penny Loafers are shoes that are similar to moccasins but with firm soles and heal.

**Penny Squares**
- Penny Squares was an 19th century version of modern redwork.

**Peplum**
- Peplum is a short piece of fabric added along the waistline of a garment.

**Percale**
- Percale is an easily died or printed lightweight cotton fabric.

**Percaline**
- Percaline is a cotton fabric characterized by its fine fine, lightweight, glazed or glossy finish, usually dyed in one color. It is used for linings, and book bindings.

**Perfect Sew**
- Perfect Sew or Sew Perfect is a starch like liquid used to stiffen fabric for embroidery or heirloom sewing.

**Periwig**
- Periwig is an 18th century man's wig.
**Periwinkle**
- Periwinkle is the color pale purplish blue.

**Pearle Cotton**
- Pearle cotton is a yarn made of two strands of cotton twisted very tightly. Pearle cotton offers a beautiful silk-like finish.

**Permanent Marker**
- When you want to mark something permanently, the permanent marker is ideal. This ink pen comes in several widths of tip, but the ink does not come out.

**Permanent Press**
- Permanent Press is a fabric finish popular in ready to wear garments because if properly managed it does not need pressing because the fabric remains largely wrinkle free.

**Perpendicular**
- Perpendicular is a term describing lines or lay of product that intersect or cross over each other.

**Perse**
- Perse is the color gray blue.

**Persian**
- Persian is lining material made of thin soft silk.

**Peruke**
- Peruke is an 18th century wig.

**Petasos**
- Petasos is a hat with a broad brim.

**Peter Pan Collar**
- Peter Pan Collar is a small fitted collar.

**PETG Shrinkable Film**
- PETG Shrinkable Film is shrink wrap packaging.

**Petit Point**
- Petit Point is tent stitch hand embroidery.
Pewter
- Pewter is the color blue gray.

Petersham
- Petersham is a rayon or cotton ribbon that is flexible and ribbed for use in hat bands and waistline facings. Be sure to preshrink.

Petticoat
- A Petticoat is an underskirt a little shorter than the over clothing. Petticoats are often made with ruffles, pleats, and lace edges.

PFP
- PFP is the abbreviation for prepare-for-print.

Phosphorescent
- Phosphorescent is a chemical paint or surface that "glows in the dark". When our children were eight to twelve years old, we painted their bedroom with phosphorescent paint depicting the stars and solar system. It was truly remarkable how the wall sky lit up just as though we were in a planetarium.

Photochromic
- Photochromic is print or ink that is virtually invisible indoors, but become a brightly colored when exposed to intense light of the sun.

Phylactery
- Phylactery is a religious box made of leather containing scripture passages. It is worn as a symbol and reminder of the scripture as detailed in the Deuteronomy 6 of the Old Testament. Jewish men are to bind the scripture to their foreheads and to their left forearm. "Hear O, Israel the Lord is One, Thou shalt love the Lord with all your heart and with all your strength and will all your mind...".

Piceous
- Piceous is the color brownish black.
**Pick**
- Pick is the crossgrain thread woven over the grain of the fabric as fill. Also known as crossgrain thread, weft, or fill thread.

**Pick Up Bustle**
- A French or Ballroom Bustle may me made into a Pick Up Bustle by use of a loop and button where the center of the train is lifted and attached to the bustle making it a floor length treatment instead of a trailing treatment.

**Picture Hat**
- Picture Hat is a broad brim lady's hat.

**Pickstitch**
- Pickstitch is a hand sewing technique in which the sewer passes the needle through just a few strands of thread instead of all the way through the fabric.

**Pick-up Line**
- The pick-up line is the foldline of the dart.

**Picot**
- Picot is a term referring to small ornamental embroidered loops often lacing the edges on ribbon, trim, or lace. Picot is then edging made of small loops.

**Pieced**
- When several pieces of materials are sewn together to form a garment (like a piecing a quilt) it is said to be pieced.

**Pieced Block**
- Quilt blocks may be constructed using background fabrics or with pieces of fabric sewn together known as a pieced block.

**Pieced Border**
- A border that has many small pieces of fabric sewn together and cut into a long strip of fabric that is used to frame a quilt is called a pieced border.

**Piecing**
- Sewing pieces of fabric together to form designs for quilt blocks is
called piecing.

**Pigskin**
- Pigskin is sueded leather for use in jackets, pants, and skirts.

**Pile**
- Pile is the nap of a fabric. If you brush the fabric one way, it looks different from brushing it the opposite way. Be sure to follow the natural flow or direction of the pile while cutting out a project.

**Pile Weave**
- Velvet, velveteen, velour and corduroy are fabrics with raised nap. Hold the fabric so the nap is down and the fabric appears smoother and the colors lighter and the fabric tends to wear better this way. When the nap is up colors appear darker and texture is courser. These fabrics are said to have a pile weave or may be described as fabrics with high pile.

**Pileus**
- Pileus is an ancient Roman cap.

**Pill**
- Pill is a term that describes fibers that collect into a tangled ball on the surface of the fabric as a result of wear.

**Pillbox**
- Pillbox is a woman's hat characterized by its small size, straight sides, flat crown, and lack of a brim.

**Pilling**
- Pilling is the development of small fabric lint balls on the surface of a fabric such as flannel as a result of wear. Better quality fabric pills less than lesser quality fabric.

**Pillor Lace**
- Pillor Lace is bobbin lace applied to the surface of a pillow.

**Pillow Lace**
- Pillow Lace is bobbin lace.
**Pillow Tuck**
- Pillow Tuck is a term referring to the added length of a quilt to accommodate standard pillows at the head of the bed.

**Pillowcase Finish**
- How do you sew a pillow case finish quilt? Lay the quilt batting flat. Lay the backing right side up over the backing. Finally, lay the quilt top right side down over the backing (right sides together). Seam around three sides and half of the fourth. Turn the quilt inside out with quilt top and backing right sides out. Hand stitch to close the envelope. This technique is called the Envelope Style Finish or the Pillowcase Finish.

**Pima Cotton**
- This is a useful underlining fabric, but does not drape well and tend to stick to other garments. This is a very fine American Egyptian cotton.

**Pin Basting**
- Pin Basting is a quilt binding technique in which the quilt sandwich (top, fill, backing) are fastened together temporarily using safety pins which are removed during the quilting process.

**Pin Check**
- Pin Check is a fabric with a small check woven into the weave and color giving the look of many rows of white dots. Also called Pin Head, Pick and Pick.

**Pin Cushion**
- A Pin Cushion is a very helpful tool to hold pins. As you start pinning, you can easily find your pins in the pin cushion. As you remove your pins, you conveniently have a place to put them.
**Pin Head**
- Pin Head is a fabric with a small check woven into the weave and color giving the look of many rows of white dots. Also called Pin Check, Pick and Pick.

**Pick and Pick**
- Pick and Pick is a fabric with a small check woven into the weave and color giving the look of many rows of white dots. Also called Pin Head, Pin Check.

**Pina Cloth**
- Pina Cloth is Phillipino silky pineapple fiber fabric.

**Pink**
- Pink is the color bluish red.

**Pinkish**
- Pinkish is the color pink.

**Pin Marking**
- How do you Pin Mark? Aligning seams, design points, borders, and sashing to insure their seams line up properly is easily accomplished by pressing the point of a pin into the fabric and lining up the adjacent fabric with the pin. Leave the pin in place until you are ready to do the final sewing of the area. Pin marking is simply using a pin to align the fabric for seaming and the spot may be called the Pin Mark.

**Pin Tuck Foot**
- The pintuck presser foot is a specialty sewing machine presser foot used with grooves on the underside to accommodate rows of previously sewn pin tucking. The previous stitches simply slide through the grooves providing continued even sewing without complications. A pintuck foot may have five, seven, or nine grooves.

**Pinafore**
- A pinafore is a sleeveless full bodice apron originally used to protect a gown from dirt, but frequently worn as a sleeveless dress or overdress. Also known as a pinny.
**Pincushion**
- The pincushion is a valuable tool for keeping track of pins. Wrist mounted pincushions are also handy. Magnetic pin holders do a great job as well.

**Pinking Shears**
- Unlike sewing scissors that leave a straight clean cut, these scissors cut an intriguing zig zag toothy looking finish. They are often used for decorative purposes or to prevent raw edges from unraveling. Pinking shears are important specialty sewing scissors.

**Pinner**
- Pinner is an 18 century woman's cap.

**Pinstripe**
- Pinstripe is a thin line of color in a fabric that form a narrow stripe often used for men's suiting or dress shirts with intermittent blue and white pin stripes.

**Pins**
- Pins are used for basting and pattern layout to temporarily hold pieces together. Recommended: large glass head pins.

**Pintucks**
- A pintuck is decorative treatment where two rows of narrow sewn tucks or raised folds are sewn to add a raised look to the garment.

**Pinwheel**
- Pinwheel is the shape of a child's toy consisting of a wheel or leaflike curls of paper or plastic loosely attached by a pin to a stick, designed to revolve when blown by or as by the wind often reproduced in quilts as a decorative block or pinwheel block.

**Piped Seam**
- A piped seam is a seam encasing piping or cording.

**Piping**
- Piping is cording covered with bias fabric used to decorate edges on garments. Piping is often encased in the seam.
Pique
- Pique' is a medium weight fabric with raised design (cords, wales, waffles, or patterns). Versions may be woven or knitted.

Pith
- Pith also referred to as a pith helmet is a lightweight protective head covering worn by soldiers or construction workers.

Pivot
- As you sew along, you often come to a spot where you want to change the direction of your sewing. At this point, move your needle to the down position (if your sewing machine has needle up/down, just press the button for needle down. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric until it is lined up the way you want. This is called "pivoting" and the sewer is said to pivot the fabric. Put the presser foot down and sew. With the needle down, the stitch is held firmly in place avoiding any skipped stitches or extra thread puckers. With the needle in the up position and the presser foot raised, you can turn the fabric, but it will result in thread loops and skipped stitches.

Place Mat
- Placemat is a table accessory used to protect the table while eating. Each place setting was positioned on top of a placemat. (Placemats)

Placket
- A placket is simply a finished V-shaped garment opening. Plackets appear in golf shirt collars, men's shirt cuff, back of a dress, etc. A placket is usually formed with two layers of fabric and sometimes added innerfacing to maintain shape and stability.

Plaid
- Plaid is a twilled wool fabric reminiscent of a national Scottish costume.

Plain Weave
- Plain Weave is a term applied to any common woven fabric design which involves alternate interlacing warp and filling yarns.
**Pleat**
- A pleat is a tuck in the fabric providing functional or decorative fullness like a pleat in slacks.

**Plied Yarn**
- When yarns are twisted together in a continuous direction, they are called plied yarns.

**Plisse**
- Plisse is a crinkled or puckered cotton fabric.

**Ply**
- Ply means layer or thickness. Two strand thread is said to be two ply. Three layers of fabric are said to be three ply.

**Pocket Flap**
- Pocket Flap is fabric designed to go over the top of a pocket (usually a rear pocket or jacket pocket) closing the pocket.

**Poet's Sleeve**
- Poet's Sleeve is a style of sleeve characterized by full sleeves with pleats tapered from the shoulder to a close fit at the wrist.

**Point**
- Point is a jeweler's measurement of a gem in terms of parts of a carat (1/100 points = 1 Point, 3 Carats = 300 Points).

**Point Clapper**
- Point Clapper is a wooden pressing tool designed to press fabric points.

**Point Collar**
- Gown sleeve Collars may be attached to the gown with ties attached to the collar and called Point Collar.

**Point Coupe's**
- Point Coupe's is a cutwork lace embroidery technique where part of the fabric is trimmed away leaving openings for ornate
insertions.

**Point d' Espirit**
- Point D' Espirit is a netting with an all over pattern of dots.

**Point Presser**
- Point Presser is a pressing or ironing tool designed to press fabric points.

**Point Presser and Pounding Block**
- Point Presser and Pounding Block are pressing or ironing tools to make crisp folds in garments and other fabric applications.

**Pointed Sleeve**
- Pointed Sleeve or Gauntlet Sleeve is a sleeve style characterized by long flowing sleeve with a point just at the back of the hand.

**Point Turner**
- Collars, cuffs, and pockets are often very difficult to turn right side out after sewing. This tool consisting basically of a wooden, plastic, or bamboo probe helps work the fabric out toward to the very ends of their points. Once done the collar or item in pressed in place and a perfect point results.

**Postage Stamp Quilt**
- Postage Stamp Quilt is a style of quilt where the pieces of the quilt are all the size of a postage stamp.

**Plastisol**
- Plastisol is a substance used to finish fabrics like ink or printing solution that is a mix of vinyl resin and plasticizer solvent applied to the surface providing a wide variety of color finishes.

**Plastron**
- Plastron is a medieval under armor breastplate.

**Platinum**
- Platinum is the color medium gray.

**Playsuit**
- Playsuit is a garment outfit worn by children during play
activities.

**Playwear**
- Playwear is a general term for children's garments worn for informal play activities.

**Pleat**
- Pleat is a fold in fabric created by doubling it over itself pressing and stitching.

**Plimsolls**
- Plimsolls also known as sneakers are canvas shoes.

**Plug**
- Plug is a top hat.

**Plum**
- Plum is the color reddish purple.

**Plummy**
- Plummy is the appearance of the plum color.

**Plush**
- Plush is a term referring to fabric with a long pile that feels smooth to the touch.

**Pocketbook**
- Pocketbook is a handbag or purse.

**Pocket Kerchief**
- Pocket Kerchief is a small usually square piece of linen or cotton used for personal hygiene and carried in a pocket.

**Pointelle**
- Pointelle is a fabric with chevron shaped designs.

**Point d'esprit**
- Point d'esprit is netting with dots on it used for evening gowns. Also referred to as Leno, Gauze, Knotted, or Mesh fabrics.
**Pointless Designs**
- Pointless Designs does not mean useless or bad or such. It means a design that has no points to match.

**Pole**

**Polo Coat**
- Polo Coat is a tan camel's hair overcoat distinguished by its half belt in the back of the coat.

**Polo Shirt**
- Polo Shirt is a snug knit pullover shirt usually with turnover collar and short sleeves.

**Polonaise**
- Polonaise is a fancy dress worn over other formalwear characterized by short sleeves, fitted waistline, and cutaway skirt.

**Polyester**
- Polyester is a highly popular fabric (second only to cotton) made of synthetic fibers characterized by strength, resiliency, and durability.

**Polyester Fiberfill**
- Polyester Fiberfill is stuffing material made of synthetic poly and used to fill pillows, cushions, even quilts.

**Polyester Lining**
- Polyester lining offers added warmth in a non breathing, wrinkle free, machine wash and dry fabric.

**Polymer**
- Polymer is a synthetic solution of chemicals used to produce spun fibers for threads and fabrics.

**Polypropylene**
- Polypropylene also known as polyolefin or Olefin is a synthetic fiber characterized by its light weight, strength, and durability.

**Polysheen**
- Polysheen is a bright shiny embroidery thread finish.
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)
- Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) is a plastic used for many different products including plumbing pipe, construction elements, and furniture.

Poncho
- A poncho is a blanket with a slit in the middle for putting your head through and wearing. It is commonly seen in the old Western movies, where a Mexican is sitting beside the dusty adobe wall in his poncho.

Pongee
- Pongee is a type of silk fabric like China silk, but with a finer warp than weft.

Poodle
- Poodle is a nubby looped fabric similar to the dog's coat. Also known as Poodle Cloth.

Poodle Skirt
- Poodle Skirt is a circular skirt made of felt with a poodle applique’ on it - retro 1950's.

Poplin
- Poplin is a cotton weave similar to broadcloth, but with a heavier rib.

Poppy
- Poppy is the color reddish orange.

Porkpie Hat
- Porkpie Hat is hat characterized by a low crown that angles upward from its up turned brim except in the front where it is turned down.

Portrait Neckline
- Portrait Neckline is a style of neckline like the Bateau or Sabrina, but which flares out to form a small collar usually lied with a contrasting fabric.
Position Indicators
- Position Indicators are markings on a pattern to be transferred to fabric during layout for proper fabric matching prior to actual sewing.

Postiche
- Postiche is a toupee or wig.

Posts
- Squares are often used at the corners where sashings meet -- called posts.

Pot Hat
- Pot Hat is a hat similar to a derby.

Pouf
- Pouf is a term describing loops of netting or veil at the back of the head.

Pounding Block
- Pounding Block is a pressing or ironing tool designed to press garments or fabrics.

Pourpoint
- Pourpoint is a doublet which is quilted and padded.

Powder Blue
- Powder Blue is the color of pale blue.

Powernet
- Powernet is a fourway stretch fabric used in corsetts.

Prairie Points
- Prairie Points are triangular pieces of folded fabric that provide a nice folded edge finish.

Prepare-for-garment-dye
- Prepare-for-garment-dye is a practice of clothier manufacturers to produce garments that are ready to wear except for their final color or dying. Using this technique the manufacturer can produce a limited number of garments for display in retail chain.
stores and then quickly respond to the demands for specific colors by finish dying these ready to dye garments.

Pre-shrink

- Most fabric shrinks when it is washed. The hotter the water and the drying - the more it will shrink. What a heart ache to spend hours creating a beautiful project only to see it shrunken and distorted after just one washing. Solution: pre-shrink or shrink the fabric intentionally before cutting and sewing. Many notions such as tapes, braids, zippers, linings, and interfacing may need pre-shrinking. Notions made of 100% polyester including trims, braids, and zipper tape do not need to be pre-shrunk. Fusible interfacing should not be pre-shrunk, while non-fusible interfacing should be pre-shrunk. Always check manufacturer's recommendations before pre-shrinking.

Press Cloth

- Ironing can be risky. With many fabrics even the slightest amount of excess heat leaves ugly iron shine or scorch marks. The Pressing Cloth or just press cloth is the solution. Lay the press cloth over the fabric to be ironed and press with the iron set as appropriate. Any shine or damage is picked up by the press cloth instead of the finished fabric. The press cloth is also vital when applying fusible interfacing. Popular brands: Eze-ViewTM, Steam 'n ShapeTM.

Presser Foot

- Just behind the needle is a second bar on your sewing machine. This bar is called the presser bar. On the bottom of this bar, a special attachment is fastened known as the presser foot. Like delicate robotic fingers the presser foot presses down on top of the fabric while the feed dogs reach up to pull the fabric forward. There are many different types of presser feet, but essentially they all do the same basic function: push down so the fabric moves properly. Common presser feet include: straight stitch foot, zig zag foot, satin stitch foot, buttonhole foot, button foot, and zipper foot. Quilters especially appreciate the 1/4 inch quilting foot.

Presser Foot Lever

- The presser foot lever is the lever is a lever used to lift the
presser foot to enable the fabric to be placed under or removed from the presser foot. The presser foot lever is located under the upper arm of the machine usually toward the back of the machine. Many machines have knee lift mechanism to enable hands free presser foot control. A few of the upper end sewing machines even provide an electronic button to control the presser foot.

Pressing
- Pressing is the technical term to describe ironing with a steam iron.

Pressing Cloth
- This is another name for the press cloth. It is simply a cloth placed over fabric before pressing with an iron. It protects the fabric from damage.

Pressing Mitt
- If you have every burned your finger or hand on a hot iron, you can appreciate the pressing mitt. It looks just like a large mitten, but is is designed to protect your hand from being burned by that hot iron. It is usually thick and quilted, but when you need to hold the fabric while ironing, it is much safer with a pressing mitt and without.

Press-on Materials
- Press on materials include a variety of fusible interfacings as well as patches such as those used for blue jeans.

Pressure Suit
- Pressure Suit is whole body garment designed to balance the pressures outside the suit as in Space or Underwater.

Pret-a-porter
- Pret-a-porter is also known as ready to wear garments.

Pretreating
- Pretreating, prewashing, and preshrinking are essentially the same. Fabrics tend to shrink, bleed, or otherwise alter their features when exposed to heat, moisture, and certain chemicals. Therefore, before sewing with a fabric it is usually recommended that you prepare your fabric. Rule of thumb: the way you expect
to clean your finished product is the way you need to prepare your fabric. If you plan to wash in cold water, prewash in cold water. If you plan to dry clean, have the fabric dry cleaned before sewing.

**Pre-treating Precautions**
- Pre-treating, pre-washing, and preshrinking are essentially the same -- the procedure of preparing fabric cleaning, preshrinking, and setting the color. Rule of thumb: the way you expect to clean your finished product is the way you need to prepare your fabric. If you plan to wash in cold water, pre-wash in cold water. If you plan to dry clean, have the fabric dry cleaned before sewing.

**Pretrim**
- To reduce bulk, trim off part of one seam allowance before sewing the seam. This is called pre-trim.

**Pre-wash**
- Pre-washing is the procedure of preparing fabric for sewing. Pre-washing cleans, preshrinks, and sets the color. It is also a technique of removing roughages, impurities, and thread bits prior to using the fabric. It is comparable to pre-shrinking, but the focus is on removal of impurities rather than merely shrinking the fabric.

**Prickstitch**
- Prick stitching is used on velvet and suede fabrics that tend to show stitching poorly. Prick stitching is sewn on the back side of the fabric hiding the stitching in the nap of the fabric.

**Primary Colors**
- Primary Colors are those colors that when mixed form other colors. Primary Colors include Red, Yellow, and Green.

**Primrose Yellow**
- Primrose Yellow is the color greenish yellow.

**Prince Albert**
- Prince Albert is a coat that is fitted at the chest and shoulders and styled with a double breasted front.
Prince of Wales Check
- Prince of Wales Check is fabric with large red or brown checks on cream or gray backgrounds named for Edward VII Prince of Wales because of his passion for this design.

Princess Seams
- Princess Seams are seams used to create a form fitted contour on the front or back of a garment.

Princess Veil
- Princess Veil is a veil style that reaches about five feet in length coming to the knees. (Ballet or Princess Length).

Princess Waist
- Princess Waist A dress style with a fitted bodice with gently flares to the skirt. Almost anyone can wear it well. It is also called an A-Line.

Print
- Print is fabric that has been printed.

Production Pattern
- Production Pattern is the solid or hard permanent master pattern used to produce other patterns and garments.

Protractor
- Protractor is a mathematical devise used to measure angles. It looks like a ruler with a plastic rainbow from one end to the other.

Prunella
- Prunella is a heavy wool shoe fabric.

Prussian Blue
- Prussian Blue is the color greenish blue.

Pseudosuede
- Amara, Feathersuede, Bellesieme, Suede 21TM, Ultrasuede®, and nonwoven fabrics that look like suede are called pseudosuede.
Puce
• Puce is the color dark red.

Pucker
• Pucker is fabric gathered together or bunched up by stitches in lumps caused to poor tensions, dull needle, or unstable fabric.

Puckering
• Puckering is fabric gathered together by stitches in lumps caused to poor tensions, dull needle, or unstable fabric.

Puckered Bodice
• A Puckered Bodice is a scrunchy look often associated with tube tops.

Puff Sleeve or Pouf Sleeve
• Puff Sleeve or Pouf Sleeve is a full sleeve created by gathers around the armhole.

Puff Embroidery
• Puff Embroidery is sewing a design over foam material to produce a 3D effect.

Puff Sleeve
• Puff Sleeve is a type of sleeve (long or short) characterized by puffiness at the shoulder.

Puggaree
• Puggaree is a scarf used as a hatband.

Pullover
• Pullover is any garment that is pulled over the head in order to put it on for wearing.

Pump
• Pump is a shoe often worn by women for dressy occasions.

Purple
• Purple is the color red blue and may be descriptive of fabrics dyed this color. Purplish, Purply, Purpure.

**Pulse Motor**
• A Pulse Motor is a motor used in computerized sewing machines to generate stitch formation.

**Punch Embroidery Design**
• During the early years of embroidery (before computerized digitizing), professional embroiderers would use punch cards and generate designs known as punch embroidery design

**Puppets**
• Puppets are creations that resemble people or animals usually with moving mouths to simulate talking and acting for performances for children.

**Purl Stitch**
• Purl Stitch is a basic stitch used in knitting that provides the same appearance on both sides of the fabric.

**Purse**
• Purse is a woman's small handbag.

**Push Up Jeans**
• Push-up Jeans use spandex in jeans used to lift and shape hips.

**Puttee**
• Puttee is a protective leg wrap stretching from ankle to knee.

**Putty**
• Putty is the color light brownish gray.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Qiviut
- Qiviut is musk ox hair fiber used to produce a non shrinking fabric like gray cashmere.

Quality
- Quality is a descriptive term certifying a degree of excellence.

Quarter-Inch
- Quarter-Inch is a measurement used for quilting applications in which a quarter inch foot is used to sew quarter inch seams.

Queen Anne Neckline
- Queen Anne Neckline is a style of neckline characterized by a heart shape where the back of the collar is higher than the front which scoops down in the heart shape.

Quick Set Bobbin
- In a traditional top loading sewing machine, it is necessary to leave a thread tail when you insert the bobbin so that you can manually lower the needle and pick up the bobbin thread lifting it above the needle plate. Several of the more modern sewing machines offer a special feature called a quick set bobbin. Simply, insert the bobbin. Guide the thread tail to the trimmer and you are ready to sew. There is no more need to manually retrieve the bobbin thread and lift it above the needle place.

Quillow
- A Quillow is a pocket pillow quilt or a quilt designed to fold into a pocket forming a pillow. Take it out and you have a quilt.

Quilt
- A Quilt is a sewing project layered with top fabric, filler, and back fabric.
**Quilt Backing**
- Quilt backing is fabric used on the back of a quilt. While quilt tops or fronts are made with intricate block designs, quilt backs are usually one larger piece of the same fabric.

**Quilt As You Go**
- Quilt As You Go is a quilting technique where each quilt square is pieced, sandwiched, and quilted before connecting to another quilt block.

**Quilt Frame**
- Quilting Frame is a large piece of equipment used to hold the quilt layers in place during the machine quilting process. Frames are also available for hand quilting applications. Quilting Frames with long arm sewing machines are called long arm quilting frames.

**Quilt Guild**
- A Quilt Guild is a group of quilters who organize to support, encourage, and share quilting. A Quilt Guild may provide Quilting Bees or group quilting projects. They may provide quilting instruction. They may band together to support community service needs such as making lap quilts for seniors.

**Quilt Piecing**
- Sewing pieces of fabric together to form designs for quilt blocks is called piecing.

**Quilt Top**
- This is the side of the quilt designed as the show side. It is also described as the top of the quilt. The quilt top may be constructed by piecing, applique', or a combination of the two.

**Quilter's Ruler**
- Accurate cutting is vital especially for quilters. Several different quilter's rulers are available to help accurately cut fabric using the precision-cut acrylic ruler, rotary cutter, and rotary cutting mat.

**Quilter's Ruler Handle**
• A convenient handle is available for holding and manipulating the quilter's ruler. Suction cups attach to the ruler giving the quilter improved measuring and cutting control.

**Quilting**
• The process of sewing the three layers of the quilt together is called quilting. It may give many different appearances with designs, hand stitching, and various machine quilting stitches.

**Quilting Bee**
• Quilting Bee is a group effort to produce a quilt.

**Quilting Design**
• Quilting Design is a pattern used to quilt finished quilts. Hand quilting frames are used to hold the layers of the quilt together during quilting. The frame may be circular or oval, and especially the smaller ones are called Quilt Hoops. Finish machine quilting is done on a long arm quilting machine following a template quilting design to finish the quilt.

**Quilting Hoop**
• Rabato is a collar with a lace edge but with a stiff high back.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Rabato
- Rabato is a collar with a lace edge but with a stiff high back.

Race
- The hook of the sewing machine travels in a groove either back and forth (oscillating hook machines) or round and round (rotary hook machines). The track in which the hook travels is called the race. It is most important to oil the race every few hours.

Raglan
- Raglan is an overcoat with raglan sleeves.

Raglan Sleeve
- Raglan Sleeve is a sweatshirt styled sleeve form with a diagonal seam from the under arm to the neckline.

Rag Quilt
- Rag Quilt is a style of quilting characterized by all raw edge seam allowance exposed producing a shaggy ragged or frayed appearance after washing.

Rail Fence
- Rail Fence is a quilt design and construction method using strips of fabric at right angles to produce the quilt.

Railroading
- Railroading is a technique to prevent thread twisting on cross-stitch.

Rainbow Colors
- Rainbow colors are the colors you see when you look at a rainbow including blue-violet, yellow, and orange-red.

Raincoat
- Raincoat is an outerwear garment worn made of waterproof fabric and worn to keep the wearer dry during rain.
**Rainwear**
- Rainwear is clothing that is waterproofed or water-resistant.

**Raised Waistline**
- Raised Waistline is a style of waistline slightly above the normal or natural waist.

**Rajah**
- Rajah is a brand of silk made from irregular yarns that is thicker than shantung.

**Ramie**
- Ramie is an Asian plant used to produce a fabric much like linen or silk often bleached white. The fiber is also used to make China-grass fabric, rope, twine, and nets.

**Raschel Knit**
- Raschel Knit is a type of knit fabric that resembles hand crocheted fabrics.

**Rateen**
- Rateen is coarse woolens.

**Ratine’**
- Ratine’ is a loose weave rough and bulky fabric.

**Ravel/Ravelling**
- Ravelling is a technique used to fray the edge of a fabric. Sew a seam along the edge a distance from the raw edge. The pull the crossing threads and leave the other threads dangling as a fringe.

**Raw Edge**
- Any unfinished edge is called a raw edge.

**Raw Silks**
- Raw Silks are a type of silk fabric that is typically very course and loosely woven.
Rayon
- Rayon is a common lining fabric that responds well to machine washing and drying. Rayon eliminates static cling when lining silk garments. It resists wrinkles and is common in better men's wear. Brand: Ambiance by Bemberg.

Rayon Thread
- Rayon is a synthetic thread that has a high-luster great for machine embroidery and decorative applications. Brands: Pear Crown Rayon Thread, Sulky® Embroidery Thread.

Ready To Wear
- RTW or Ready To Wear is mass produced clothing purchased in clothing stores.

Rebozo
- Rebozo is a Mexican scarf.

Red
- Red is the color of ruby or blood.

Reddish
- Reddish is the color shade of red.

Redwork
- Redwork is an embroidery technique in which a running stitch embroidery outline is produced without fill stitches in the color Red (Redwork), Blue (Bluework), Black (Blackwork).

Redingote
- Redingote is a coat or a dress with a front panel of a contrasting color.

Reefer
- Reefer is a thick usually double breasted and snug fitting coat.

Reflective
- Reflective is the characteristic of a material, ink, or fabric that causes light to bounce off it creating a shiny appearance.
Regimentals
- Regimentals are easily frayed (do not respond well to pressing) fabrics with obvious narrow rib across the grain.

Registered Number
- Registered Number (RN) is a number issued by the Federal Trade Commission identified with specific manufacturer and details.

Reinforce
- A seam may be reinforced by sewing a second seam very tightly next to another seaming, using seam or bias tape for reinforcement. Certain high stress seams require seam reinforcement such as croch seams.

Released Dart
- Released Dart is a darn whose tip that is left open.

Repeat
- Repeat is the pattern of the fabric that has a distinct beginning and ending point where it begins again.

Repellency
- Fabric resistance to water, stains, soil, and other environmental degradation is known as Repellency.

Reseda
- Reseda is a color of grayish green.

Resiliency
- Fabrics ability to spring back to its original shape after twisting, crushing, wrinkling, etc. is known as Resiliency.

Resizing
- Resizing is the process of changing the scale of a graphic image or embroidery design. Resizing may cause density flaws and problems.

Retail
- Retail refers to those merchants who bring products for sale to the customer from the suppliers and wholesalers. The retail price is a price for goods sold to the public that includes the original wholesale price that the retailer paid for the goods, plus expenses.
including shipping, handling, merchandising, overhead, and sales costs. The retail markup varies by industry and depends on the willingness of the public to pay. Some retailers mark up the price five to fifteen percent, others mark it up one hundred percent, and others have been known to mark up the price ten or more times the original price paid.

**Retayne**
- Retayne is a washing additive that prevents commercial dyes from bleeding or running.

**Reticule**
- Reticule is a drawstring carry all bag.

**Retroprint**
- Retroprint is a fabric printed to look like and create a nostalgic feeling toward the past.

**Reverse Applique’**
- How do you do Reverse Applique? While applique' attaches a precut design onto the face of a fabric, Reverse Applique' exposes the design underneath or through the face fabric. Begin by determining the design you want to reveal through the top layer of fabric. Then carefully cut the top layer of fabric and turn the edges under to form the design. Blindstitch the top layer to a layer of fabric underneath. In quilting the reverse applique can be used to reveal designs on the background or foundation fabric.

**Reverse Button**
- On a sewing machine sews backward when the user presses the reverse button on the sewing machine.

**RFID**
- RFID is abbreviation for Radio Frequency Identification involving an antenna and chip to transmit or receive signal to track goods.

**Rhinestones**
- Rhinestones are man made paste or glass gems usually colorless, but shaped with facets to sparkle like a diamond.

**Rib Knit**
• Rib Knit is a basic knitting stitch where the machine requires two needles operating at right angles to each other giving crossgrain high elasticity.

**Rib Weave**
• Rib Weave is a basic weave characterized by a slight ridge in one direction, potential thread slippage, and lack of durability. Examples: broadcloth, cord fabric, poplin, etc.

**Ribbing**
• Ribbing is a knit fabric commonly used on T-shirts, necklines, and cuffs.

**Ribbon**
• Ribbon is trim fabric that is usually flat or tubular and made of silk, rayon, or other fabric.

**Ribbon Floss**
• Ribbon Floss™ is a braided rayon ribbon 1/16th inches wide used for decorative sewing.

**Ribbon Lace or Soutache**
• Ribbon Lace is a lace like item constructed with ribbon sewn over fine net to form an ornate pattern. Also known as Southache Lace.

**Rickrack Stitch**
• A Rickrack Stitch is a super strong triple sewing machine stitch.

**Riding Knickers**
• Riding Knickers are pants used for riding horses.

**Right Side**
• Fabric is usually two sides, one side is intended to be seen in the final project, and the other is intended to be hidden within the project. While some fabrics have no right or wrong sides, it is
important to select the best looking side during the layout and cut out stages to produce the best looking finished project.

**RIN#**
- RN# is the abbreviation for Registered Identification Number issued on fabrics and other products by the Federal Trade Commission.

**Ring**
- A ring is a piece of jewelry worn on the finger often to represent certain status, accomplishment, or relationships.

**Rip Methods**
- Woven fabrics are often designed in such a way that if you pull one thread from selvedge to selvedge, the thread will form a perfectly straight line identifying the straight of the goods. There are two basic techniques for ripping fabric (most commonly done with woven drapery fabrics or woven quilting fabrics). 1.) Cut a snip across the selvage at a selected spot, rip by pulling the fabric on opposite sides of the snip. 2.) Pull a single thread to identify the straight of the goods by pulling one thread just an inch or so. Sometimes the thread will come easily across the entire width of the fabric, depending on the density of the fabric weave. Once identified, you may cut along the line or rip if it is a light weight fabric.

**Rip Stop Nylon**
- Rip-stop Nylon is a fabric that prevents unravelling by using a special weave that stops rips without adding weight.

**Rise**
- Rise or crotch depth is the measure of a garment from crotch to waistband.

**Rivet**
- Rivet is a metal or plastic fastening device with a male and female end that are connected through a hole in fabric and pressed together to fasten together.

**Rivie're**
- Rivie're is a necklace with mounted diamonds or other precious stones.
**Roan**
- Roan is a reddish color often used to describe a breed of horses with shades of this color.

**Robe**
- Robe is a long flowing garment with an open front and a cloth tie belt often worn around the house for lounging. It may also be called a bathrobe.

**Robe de chambre**
- Robe de chambre is a dressing gown or robe worn around the bedroom.

**Rochet**
- Rochet is a garment often worn by priests and monks made of white linen.

**Roll Line**
- Roll Line is fold of a collar or lapel.

**Rolled Hem**
- A special rolled hem presser foot is used to evenly roll the fabric edge over on itself while the fabric is being stitched. The fabric is funneled into the front of the presser foot and comes out behind in a pretty narrow rolled over hem perfect for many sewing projects. The narrow-rolled hem may also be called simply "rolled hem" or "narrow hem".

**Roman Collar**
- Roman Collar is a distinctive collar used in religious garments.

**Roman shade**
- When it comes to window treatments, the Roman Shade is high on the popularity scale. It serves to functions. First, it provides beautiful window treatment; and second, it provides practical protection from the sun. The Roman Shade is designed to be a fabric shade capable of being pulled up or down. When it is down it hands flat is said to be closed. When it is drawn up the fabric forms neat sectional folds and is said to be open.
**Romper**
- A Romper is a one piece garment with the lower part like bloomers.

**Roquelaure**
- Roquelaure is a 19th century knee length garment.

**Rose**
- Rose is the color of buff or purplish red.

**Rose Pink**
- Rose Pink is the color of muted pink.

**Roseate**
- Roseate is a color resembling a reddish rose.

**Rotary Cutter**
- Here is revolution in cutting. This is like a pie shaped circular razor blade on a handle. Just roll the cutter and the fabric cuts smoothly and evenly. In our fabric store, we use the rotary cutter at the cutting table all the time. It is so easy and precise. Layout the fabric. Set the clear ruler in the desired position and just roll along the edge of the ruler. Note: maintain constant pressure on the rotary cutter and do not lift until the cut is finished.

**Rotary Cutting Mat**
- When you use the rotary cutter, be sure to put a self healing rotary cutting mat under it. The rotary cutter will cut whatever it rolls over: wood, plastic, etc. The self healing cutting mat is ideal and provides a durable cutting surface.
Rotary Hook
- Around and around it goes and where it stops not body knows. This is what a rotary hook does. At one point of the rotary mechanism is a small hook that travels all the way around continuously. As the needle comes down and begins it travels back up the loop forms behind the needle. The rotary hood picks up the loop and pulls it all the way around the bobbin thread until the tension pressure pulls the thread back up.

Round Cording
- Round cording is cording without a lip.

Round Neckline
- Scoop Neckline or Round Neckline is a low U shaped or round neckline.

Round vs Rectangle Tablecloths
- Tables come in all shapes and sizes. Some are round, some square, and some rectangular. Tablecloths are fabric treatments used to protect, decorate, and keep it clean. Round tablecloths are cut in a
circle and are sewn around the edge. The drop of a round table usually extends to the floor, while the drop on a Rectangular tablecloth is usually only about six inches.

**Roundabout**
- Roundabout is a 19th century snug men or boy's jacket.

**Round Robbin**
- Round Robin is a group quilting effort in which each quilter designs a block for each member of the group. Each participant then passes their block on to the person who adds it to their block. This progresses until each participant has a completed quilt with a block from each quilter. There are variations of this including the Row Swap in which each quilter produces a different row rather than a block.

**Roundelle**
- Roundelle a fifteen century head dress with a stuffed donut shape with a veil.

**Royal Blue**
- Royal Blue is the color of purplish blue.

**Royal Train**
- Royal Train is a trailing fabric treatment with a long flowing fabric trail of nine or more feet in length behind the gown. Also known as Monarch Train.

**Royal Purple**
- Royal Purple is the color of dark reddish purple.

**RTW**
- This abbreviation stands for "Ready-to-wear".

**Ruana/Ruaha**
- Ruana or Ruaha is a square woolen cloak garment like a poncho originating in Peru.

**Rubber Cement**
- Rubber Cement is a contact adhesive used in many crafting projects.
**Rubius**  
- Rubius is the color or ruby red.

**Ruby**  
- Ruby is the color of dark red.

**Ruch**  
- Ruch is material used to finish or trim a woman's garment consisting of a strip of pleated lace, net, or muslin. Ruching may be used at the collar or sleeves, and may involve ruffles or pleats of lace, muslin, or netting.

**Ruching**  
- Ruching is material for making a ruches.

**Ruddy**  
- Ruddy is the color of reddish red.

**Rufescent**  
- Rufescent is reddish color.

**Ruff**  
- Ruff is a seventh century pleated linen or muslin collar.

**Ruffle**  
- Ruffle is a decorative pleated or frilled fabric used for trimming. Ruffles are fabric folds used to create an ornate fluffy fabric texture.

**Ruffler**  
- A Ruffler is a device or machine used to create ruffles.

**Ruffling**  
- Ruffling is the process of making ruffles.

**Rufous**  
- Rufous is a reddish color.

**Rugby**  
- Rugby is a long sleeve shirt worn in association with the sport of Rugby.
Rulers
• Rulers are measuring devices often made of acrylic or clear plastic. Rulers are used in sewing for measuring and cutting. There are several shapes, sizes, and designs of rulers to facilitate easy measuring and cutting.

Running Basting Stitch
• A series of temporary stitches fastening fabrics together prior to sewing a finished seam is called a running basting stitch.

Running Stitch
• Originally, the running stitch was series of short hand stitches for hand quilting or sewing. Today, a running stitch includes any series of stitches that continues to repeat its pattern again and again. In embroidery and decorative stitches, running stitches have become very popular.

Russet
• Russet is the color of brown common in homespun cloth.

Rust
• Rust is the color of oxidized dusty red or brown.

Rusty
• Rusty is the color of rust.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Sable
• Sable is an animal whose fur give rise to the color of dark grayish yellow brown or black by the same name.

Sabot
• Sabot is the strap that holds a sandal on the foot. The shoe with a sabot may also be called a sabot shoe.

Sabrina Neck
• Sabrina Neckline is a small neckline style starting about two inches from the shoulders much like the Bateau and basically a version of the Portrait Neckline.

Sack
• Sack is a type of dress characterized by the appearance of a sack. Its loose fitting characteristics give rise to the description as a sack dress.

Sack Coat
• Sack Coat is a straight back jacket.

Sackcloth
• Sackcloth is a rough itchy fabric from camel's hair (may be blended with cotton) worn for religious penitence or mourning - hence the phrase sackcloth and ashes.

Sacking
• Sacking is fabric used to make sacks or bags.

Sad Colors
• Sad Colors are those colors that tend to leave us melancholy, depressed, weary, or sad and usually arise from colors with extreme saturations or very dark colors.

Saddle Shoe
• Saddle shoe or Saddle Oxford is a shoe characteristic of oxford styling, and two tone leather.

**SAE Measurement**
• In the United States, measurement uses the English measuring system. This system uses inches, feet, and yards. See the conversion chart below to compare Metric and SAE measurement.

**Safari Jacket**
• Safari Jacket is a shirt jacket with large pleated pockets and belt.

**Safety Cloth**
• Safety Cloth is fabric that is fireproof.

**Safety Pins**
• Safety Pins are fasteners that consist of metal wire wrapped around so that one sharp end fastens into a second end of the device.

**Safety Rules For Sewing**
• Six Safety Rules For Sewing: 1.) Clean is King. Your sewing area must be clean and orderly. Pins on the floor can do deep painful damage to bare feet, so prevent problems. The sewing table should be clear of all debris. 2.) The Needle is Sharp. Even if you are using a ballpoint needle, it is still sharp. Therefore, never place your fingers under or behind the needle. Guide the fabric through the machine allowing the machine to pull it through. Do not pull the fabric. 3.) Electricity Can be Shocking. Check your sewing machine cord. Replace the cord if it is frayed, damaged, or appears to have a short of any kind. Check the plug connection to the machine and to the wall socket. Fix or replace if you see any kind of problem. Avoid damaged cords and moisture around the cord. 4.) The Hulk Likes Bulk, but not the rest of us. Avoid getting too much fabric stuffed under the arm, because too much bulk fabric can make it difficult to control your stitching. You may be tempted to pull fabric through the needle, don't. Needles break and pieces fly. Allow the machine to do the work, and don't overtax the machine with excessive bulk. 5.) Backs Can Crack. Observe how you are sitting in front of your sewing machine. Awkward or improper sitting can leave a crook in your neck and a "Crack in your back". Try sitting with both feet squarely on the floor. Set the chair so that your chin is about even with the top of the sewing machine. Avoid bending over or having to look up or reach up. Your arms should comfortable rest on the table. Always us a
chair that is strong, stable, and has a good back. 6.) Caps Keep the tops on. Always use spool caps as recommended by the manufacturer. Spool caps keep the read from hanging up and clogging up.

**Saffron**
- Saffron is color of orange yellow.

**Sailcloth**
- Sailcloth is any heavy woven canvas type fabric (cotton, linen, polyester, jute, nylon) used for sails.

**Sailmaker's Needles**
- Sailmaker's Needle is a hand sewing needle that is curved.

**Sailor**
- Sailor is a straw hat with circular brim and short flat crown.

**Sailor Collar**
- Sailor Collar is a shirt collar appears flat and square except the tapered v shaped front.

**Salmon**
- Salmon is the color of yellowish pink also referred to as salmon pink.

**Salvage**
- Salvage is product that can no longer be sold as new due to packaging issues, knicks or marred surfaces, returned product, or being out of date.

**Salwar**
- Salwar is a pants garment with wide full fit and a draw string belt. It is often worn with a tunic.

**Sam Browne**
- Sam Browne is a uniform belt made of leather with a strap over the shoulder attached.

**Samite**
- Samite is a medieval gold and silver interwoven silk.
Sample Size
- Sample Size is the standardized size used by a manufacturer to provide standard garment sizing.

Sampler Quilt
- How do you make a Sampler Quilt? Create a collection of different quilt blocks with different design patterns. Assemble the quilt using the collection, but avoid repeating any of the quilt patterns. The quilt blocks do not have to be the same size, but may be.

Sanbenito
- Sanbenito is a coarse camel's hair or cotton blend worn as sackcloth.

Sand
- Sand is the color of yellowish gray.

Sandal
- Sandal is a shoe with over straps to hold the shoe on the foot.

Sandwashed
- Sandwashed describes fabric with a sueded finish produced by a special manufacturing process in which silks or rayons are sandwashed.

Sandwich
- Like two pieces of bread with Peanut butter and jelly inside, the term sandwich applies to the space between two layers or the encasing of one thing by two layers. A quilt is made up of a quilt top, batting, and a quilt back. Thus you have the quilt sandwich.

Sanguine
- Sanguine is the color of blood red or ruddy.

Sans Serif
- Sans Serif is a font or typestyle used in printing characterized by letters without feet or flat spots. There are several versions of the font including Arial, while other fonts like Times New Roman are serif and have more distinctive footed or flat spots on the letters.

Sap Green
• Sap Green is the color yellow green.

**Sapphire**
• Sapphire is the color of purplish blue.

**Saran Fabric**
• Saran Fabric is a synthetic fiber which resists exposure to sunlight and weathering. It is used for lawn furniture, upholstery, and carpets.

**Sarcenet**
• Sarcenet is a woven silk fabric or a garment made from such fabric.

**Sari/saree**
• Sari/saree is a light draped cloth worn by Indian women.

**Sarong Skirt**
• A Sarong Skirt is a dress like garment of long draped fabric wrapped around the body.

**Sash**
• Sash is a fabric band emblematic of the military order or as an accessory around the waist or over the shoulder. A sash is also a type of quilt border in quilting.

**Sashiko Quilting**
• Sashiko Quilting is an ancient Japanese quilting technique using light threads on dark fabric backgrounds.

**Sashing**
• How do you make sashing? Begin by cutting strips of fabric (size may vary 1 1/2" to 3"). Between the quilt blocks sew the strips of narrow fabric to separate the blocks. These strips of fabric are called sashing. The sashing provides framing to accent the quilt blocks as well as expanding the size of the quilt. The terms sashing and border are often used interchangeably. Sashing is actually borders that divide blocks.

**Satchel**
• Satchel is a small bag with a strap over the shoulder.
**Sateen**
- Sateen is a cotton fabric with long fibers that is strong and has an attractive luster.

**Satin**
- Satin is a fabric made of silk, cotton, rayon, or other synthetics characterized by a slick shiny finish.

**Satin Faconne**
- Satin Faconne is a fabric with Jacquard stripping or designs on all over satin.

**Satin Stitch**
- How do you sew a Satin Stitch? All stitches are formed essentially the same way. All stitches begin with the straight stitch. If you add maximum stitch length to a straight stitch, you get a basting stitch. If you add stitch width to a straight stitch, you get a zig zag stitch. The more width you have the wider the zig zag. If you reduce the stitch length to very short stitches while keeping stitch width (zig zag stitch), you get a satin stitch. Reduce or increase the stitch length to spread or tighten the satin stitch. Reduce or increase the stitch width and the satin stitch becomes wider or narrower. Note, however, it is essential that you use the right presser foot when using a satin stitch. A standard zig zag presser foot has a ridge that will cause the satin stitch to hang up and you produce one big knot. Use the satin stitch presser foot, a specialty presser foot, because it is made with a groove under the foot for the satin stitches to flow without bunching up. You can use the satin stitch in many ways: for applique', as a decorative stitch, to finish seams, to join fabrics together "fagoting", or as a fill in embroidery.
Satin Stitch Foot
- A Satin Stitch Foot is a sewing machine presser foot designed for use when sewing a satin stitch. The foot has a pass through groove underneath the foot to enable the dense satin stitched threads to pass unhindered. Without the satin stitch foot, satin stitches tend to catch on the bottom of a standard zig zag foot creating gobs of thread instead of the pretty satin stitch intended.

Satin Weave
- Satin weave is a fabric weave and finish that produces very tight, usually shiny, slick finish achieved by weaving the gray goods very tightly. The weft threads or crossgrain threads are very tightly woven onto the lengthwise grain producing a the slick finish.

Satin-back Crepe
- Satin-back Crepe is a reversible cloth with satin and crepe on opposite sides.
**Satinedge™ Foot**
- Satinedge™ Foot is an overcast foot with an adjustable width guide.

**Satinet**
- Satinet is imitation silk satin fabric.

**Saw Tooth Star**
- Saw Tooth Star is a quilt design using squares and triangles with a pinwheel shape filling a central square surrounded by triangular “saw tooth” surrounding the center square.

**Saxony**
- Saxony is a fabric made of fine soft wool.

**Scalloped Edging**
- Scalloped Edging is a type of lace used along the edge with an embroidered satin stitched scallop along the edge.

**Scallops**
- Scallops are features of an ornamental border involving a series of curved projections along the edge of the border.

**Scant Quarter Inch Seam Allowance**
- Quilters usually use a quarter inch seam allowance for piecing and later press the seam allowance to one side, but when the fabric is going to be turned the seam allowance needs to be adjusted slightly. A one half inch turn of the cloth leaves a small amount of the allowance in the fold itself. Therefore a Scant Quarter Inch
Seam Allowance is used which is slightly less than one quarter inch.

**Scanties**
- Scanties are briefs or panties that are especially small.

**Scapular**
- Scapular is a clerical fabric band (long and wide) worn over the shoulder (front and back) as part of a monastic habit.

**Scarf**
- Scarf is a term applied to the cut out portion on the back of a needle above the eye of the needle which creates a thread loop as the needle rises up out of the sewing machine. The machine hook snags this loop to create a stitch. Scarf is a military sash worn to signify rank or status. It is also, and more commonly, a lightweight square accessory fabric worn over the head to protect a woman's hair from wind.

**Scarf of Needle**
- Scarf of Needle is a term applied to the cut out portion on the back of a needle above the eye of the needle which creates a thread loop as the needle rises up out of the sewing machine. The machine hook snags this loop to create a stitch.

**Scarlet**
- Scarlet is the color of bright red. Scarlet cloth is a fabric with bright red color.

**Schiffli**
- Schiffli is a delicate (usually bordered) lace sewn on a netting background to highlight its intricate geometric, floral, or decorative embroidery patterns.

**Scissor Sharpening Tools**
- Sewing scissors need to be kept sharp and free from burrs, chips, and dull blades. Fabric scissors should never be used on anything but fabric. Paper scissors should never be used on fabric. Scissor sharpeners come in several different configurations from simple sharpening stones to elaborate electric grinding and buffing wheels.

**Scissors**
• Sewing scissors are vital. They come in many sizes and shapes. The larger longer scissors are technically called shears. Scissors are designed for many different purposes including cutting paper, trimming seams, cutting fabric, snipping threads, and more.

**Scoop Neckline**
• Scoop is a term referring to a Scooped Neckline which is a style of neckline low U shaped or round neckline with a gentle usually plunging neckline in front and/or in back.

**Scrap Quilt**
• How do you make a Scrap Quilt? First, collect all your scrap fabrics including whatever different fabrics you may have left over from old blue jeans, Uncle Joes work shirt, covering the ottoman, or making that prom dress or that piece of velvet you bought and just never figured out what to do with it. Lay out the fabrics for color combinations that you like. Cut and piece the scrap fabrics together into quilt blocks using whatever designs or techniques you desire. Assemble your patch worked quilt and finish your Scarp Quilt. What fun!

**Screen Print**
• Screen Print is a technique for printing fabric especially T Shirts with a variety of pictures, logos, and wording using a special ink screening printing press.

**Scrim**
• Scrim is a cotton fabric that is very durable and used for clothing and decorating.

**Scissors**
• Scissors are a vital tool used for cutting fabrics, threads, and more. There are several good brands like Gingher and Heritage Cutlery which keep a good sharp edge that can be sharpened easily. Some brands a good at first but do not sharpen well after they go dull. Never ever use fabric scissors on anything but fabric.
Scrunchies
- Scrunchies are small fabric covered elastic hair ties.

Scuff
- Scuff is a slipper shoe without a heal strap.

Sea Green
- Sea Green is the color yellow green.

Sea Island Cotton
- Sea Island Cotton is considered among the finest cotton fabric. Sea Island Cotton is a long silky cotton fiber.

Seaboot
- Seaboot is a sailor or fishermen's waterproof boot.

Seal
- Seal is the color dark brown.

Seal Ring
- Seal Ring is an engraved signet ring worn on the finger.

Sealskin
- Sealskin is a garment or item made of the skins of seals.
**Seam**
- As seam is the joining of two fabrics or fabric pieces together. In quilting the most common seam uses a 1/4 inch seam allowance. Seams may be sewn by hand or with a sewing machine (serger, or other type of sewing device).

**Seam Allowance**
- This is the amount of fabric added to provide space for stitching and trimming. Patterns will suggest the width needed for seam allowance. Common seam allowances are 1/8th inch, 1/4 inch, and 1/2 inch allowances.

**Seam And Hem Gauge**
- Never sew without it! The experts claim this is their sewing best friend. The seam and hem gauge is a six inch metal ruler with a plastic pointer slide. Use it measure and set your hems and seam with ease. It is also known as a metal sewing gauge.

**Seam Finish**
- Seam Finish is the way seams are finished to prevent fray, raveling, and improve garment durability such as zig zag, satin stitch, overcast stitching, etc.

**Seam Ripper**
- "Those who sew, must also rip." This amazing little tool makes ripping quick and easy. It is a tool with two prongs a long metal probe and a shorter one with a sharp blade between them. A handle holds the blade securely. Slide the longer prong under the thread of a hem or seam and press the blade against the treads. Like a hot knife through butter, the threads slice open and the seam is removed.

**Seam Roll**
- Seam Roll is a pressing tool used to press certain parts of garments like arms and shoulders.

**Seam Sealant**
- Edges sometimes fray creating great frustration and even ruining whole projects. The solution is often seam sealant - a adhesive resin used to seal edges and prevent fraying on cut edges. Seam sealant is used on buttonholes, ends of seams, and any other place
you are concerned about potential fraying. Brands: Fray CheckTM, No-Fray.

**Seam Sticks**
- Seam Sticks are strips of double sided tape used for basting.

**Seam Tape**
- To help seams keep their shape, seam tape is used to stabilize seams at shoulders, neckline, and various gathers. Brand: Stay-TapeTM.

**Seamline**
- The stitchline is also called the seamline.

**Seasonalization**
- Seasonalization describes a marketplace availability of fabrics and garments of all different colors throughout the year in contrast to seasonal colors being available only during their appropriate seasons: Summer, Fall, Winter, Spring.

**SEB**
- SEB is the abbreviation for single end break.

**Secure**
- Preventing fraying to fasten threads with back stitches, back tack, hand sewn knots, or small stitches is called securing the stitch or seam,

**Seersucker**
- Seersucker is a special cotton (rayon or synthetic) with a permanent crinkled stripe.

**Sewing Cards**
- Reference cards on index cards 3" X 5" or 4" X 6" are a great tool to keep track of settings and stitch information on sewing machines and sergers. Another similar application is to fasten a small piece of your project fabrics to an index card to carry with you to the fabric store for reference when shopping for additional project fabrics.

**Self-belt**
• Self-belt is a fabric belt of the same cloth as the garment.

**Self-Bound Seam**
• Self-Bound Seam is a line of stitches that looks like a French seam.

**Self-Fabric**
• The garment is made of fabric. We describe this fabric as the self-fabric of the garment. We might define the self-fabric as the source fabric in the garment.

**Selvage**
• The outer finished edges of a fabric are known as selvages (selvedge, selvege, selvage). The selvage is often stiffer than the fabric itself. It is usually printed with company information, information about the fabric, and the content of the fabric. The straight or lengthwise grain of the fabric is the thread weave running parallel to the selvage. The crossgrain runs perpendicular to the selvage. The bias is the diagonal of the fabric running forty five degrees across the fabric between the selvages. Do not include the selvage when cutting out your projects. Use only the fabric inside the selvages.

**Seminole Piecing**
• Seminole Piecing is a technique originated by the Seminole Indians in Florida. The technique makes very interesting borders. The technique takes strips of fabric and cuts them into sections. Then the sections are arranged to create contrasting rows of strips like a checkerboard.

**Sennit**
• Sennit is a braided fabric or cord.

**Separate**
• Separate is a garment that is easily mixed and matched to form various ensemble.

**Separating Zipper**
• A zipper is a special fastener system composed of a joining device, interlocking teeth, a clasp to join and release the teeth, and a stop at the top. A separating zipper is a special zipper designed for jackets and other applications where it is desirable for the zipper to come completely apart and be refitted frequently. At the bottom of
a separating zipper, instead of a the joining device spanning both sides of the zipper, a special tab (male/female) mechanism is used. Insert the male portion into the mechanism and the clasp which is attached permanently to one side of the zipper fastening the bottoms together. Pull the clasp and the two sides align. When you are done, simply pull the clasp all the way down and slide the male fastener out to separate the zipper.

**Sepia**
- Sepia is the color shade between brownish gray or dark olive brown.

**Sequins**
- Sequins are delicate ornamental pieces of shiny little disks often sewn to decorate a fabric or garments as spangles or diamante to give elegance, flare, and glistening appearance to clothing or costumes.

**Serape**
- Serape is a Mexican wool shawl that is highly colorful.

**Serge**
- To Serge implies the use of a serger machine to seam, trim, and finish edges in one step and at a significantly increase speed.

**Serge Worsted**
- Serge Worsted is unfinished worsted fabric (wool, cotton, silk, rayon, synthetics).

**Serger**
- To serge is to advance quickly. When a wave surges, the water rises quickly and powerfully. The serger is a special sewing machine that does the same thing for sewing. In one pass the serger overcasts fabric edge, trims excess, and finishes the seam. While most home sewing machines produce only 600 stitches per minute, home sergers run 1200 to 1500 stitches per minute. Sewing machines use one thread from the bobbin and one from the top spool pin. Sergers use one thread in an upper looper, one thread in the lower looper, and one or more additional threads through needles. Sergers are described as two thread, three thread, four thread, five thread, flat lock, or eight thread.
- Overlock or Serger is a special type of sewing machine designed to seam, finish, and trim all in one pass usually stitching at two to
three times the normal speed of a home sewing machine.

**Serger Cone**
- Standard sewing machine thread comes on a spool, but serger thread comes on a cone shaped spool. The cone provides much more thread to reflect the increased speed and increased amount of thread used by a serger.

**Service Cap**
- Service Cap is a military uniform cap with a flat top and visor.

**Set**
- The way pieces of fabric are fastened, arranged, stitched, or sewn together (such as piecing of a quilt block) is called set or the act of setting the fabric. When assembling a quilt top, blocks may be set side by side or on point with or without sashing.

**Set-in**
- Set-in is a term referring to the positioning and attaching of garment parts such as the sleeve to the shoulder so that they fit properly.

**Set-in sleeve**
- Usually the sleeve is made a little larger than the armhole. This requires easing the sleeve into the armhole. This is called "set-in-sleeve". By easing the fabrics together in this manner the sleeve fits and hangs properly. No easing is required to construct kimono or raglan sleeves.

**Set In Seam**
- Set In Seam also known as an inset seam is a quilting technique in which a patchwork piece is sewn into a corner or angle or connection point between two already joined pieces.

**Setting a Seam**
- How do you set a seam? In much of general sewing it common to open a seam and press the allowances flat, but in quilting it is more common to just press the quarter inch seam allowance to one side without opening the seam. To set a seam, simply iron the seam to one side without opening the seam.

**Setting Block**
- Setting Block is a block used with other blocks in a quilt top.

**Setting Applique'**
- Setting Applique' is an applique' technique in which netting, mesh, or organza is used over an applique' to give a new look or shadow effect.

**Sew**
- Sew or sewing is the application of hand stitches or machine stitching.

**Sew Order**
- In embroidery, quilting, and other sewing activities is often important to follow a prescribed 1,2,3 or step by step process and sew seams in the right order. This arrangement is called sew order.

**Sewing Gauge**
- Never sew without it! The experts claim this is their sewing best friend. The seam and hem gauge is a six inch metal ruler with a plastic pointer slide. Use it measure and set your hems and seam with ease. It is also known as a metal sewing gauge.

**Sewing Machine**
- Sewing machines are not like they use to be. Quality modern sewing machines are easier to use, less problematic, and full of features. Do not cheap out when it comes to choosing your sewing machine and sewing tools. Quality pays off big. Quality pays off with dependability and capability. That old black singer straight stitch machine was great in its day, but today sewing should be fun, relaxing, creative, and easy. Sewing should no longer mean work, creative limits, fighting rust spots, and rough stitching. How much does a modern sewing machine cost? You can buy a throw away machine for $35 to $199. A low end sewing machine will cost $300 to $600, and a mid line machine will cost $800-1200. High end sewing machines without embroidery capability can run as high as $6500. Combination sewing machine and embroidery machines will cost between $2000 and $8000. When looking for a new sewing machine do your homework: 1.) Who takes care of you when your machine starts acting up? Where can you get quality expert support? 2.) Does its straight stitch looks straight and even? Does the machine run quietly and smoothly? 3.) How many different stitches does it have, and how easy is it to change stitches? 4.)
What features does it have? __ Reverse Button, __ Needle Up/Down, __ Quick Set Bobbin, __ Easy Threading, __ Easy to operate Needle Threader, __ Auto Tensions, __ Sewing Machine Cutters or Scissors, __ Variety of Presser Feet, etc.  5.) What type of sewing machine is it? __ Mechanical (Stitches formed with levers and gears.);  __ Electronic (Electronic controlled stitching and operations.); __ Computerized (Computer controlled sewing with highly dependable pulse motors.); __ Sewing And Embroidery Machine Combined (These computerized machines are capable of doing things your grandmother never dreamed possible.)

**Sewing Machine Cutters**
- Many modern sewing machines come with a fantastic new feature called cutter of scissors. Remember with old style sewing machines whenever you finished a seam, you had to lift the presser foot and pull the fabric and thread out and cut it off by hand. Sewing cutters slice off the upper and lower thread at the push of a button quick and easy. If you get use to sewing with machine cutters, you will get spoiled fast and never truly be satisfied doing things the old way.

**Sewing Machine Motor**
- The sewing machine motor is the power drive for the sewing machine. It may be mounted on the back of the machine in plain sight, or hidden within the machine.

**Sewing Machine Oil**
- Clear non-paraphin based oil is essential for your sewing machine to keep it lubricated and running smoothly. Never ever use any other kind of oil on your machine. Many oils have the potential of gumming up the works.

**Sewing Machine Scissors**
- Sewing machine scissors are not really scissors in the sense of scissors you might hold in your hand. They are actually very sharp mechanical cutters designed to cut threads for you at the press of a button.

**Sewing Tape**
- Sewing tape is a special fabric tape is great for emergency fixes.

**Sew-Throughs**
• Sew throughs are notions such as elastic which are sewn through to attach to fabrics or garments for special uses.

**Shadowing**
• When a darker colored fabric shows through a lighter colored fabric, it is called shadowing.

**Shaft**
• In a sewing machine there are long cylindrical metal rods that carry the mechanical drive of the machine to the various parts of the sewing machine including the needle bar, feed dogs, and hook systems to control the operation of the sewing machine. These rods are called shafts. Most sewing machines have at least one upper and one lower shaft. The term shaft is also applied to the plant stem from which various fibers are developed (flax shaft).

**Shako**
• Shako is a hat with high top and plume worn with military association.

**Shalloon**
• Shalloon is a wool lining fabric used in uniforms and coats.

**Sham**
• Sham is a decorative pillow often placed on top of a quilt or comforter.

**Shank**
• Some buttons do not have holes in the face of the button. Instead a stem under the button has a hole in it for fastening in place. The stem, protrusion, or shaft is called the shank. The portion of the needle that fastens into the needle clamp is also called a shank.

**Shank Button**
• Buttons that have a stem or connect to the garment through a shank are called shank buttons. Flat buttons may also be "shanked" when hand sewing them on to a garment by wrapping threads around the connecting threads between the fabric and the button. This causes the button to stand out from the fabric.

**Shantung**
• Shantung is a medium weight woven fabric.
Sharps
- Sharps are a type of needles that have very sharp tips.

Sharkskin
- Sharkskin is a worsted wool specially finished for men's suiting. Sharkskin may also be made of rayon, acetate, and synthetics making a crisp smooth dull finish fabric.

Sharp point needle
- Sewing machine needles are made with several different types of tips including ball point, universal, and sharps. Sharps are needles with a super sharp point and are used primarily on woven fabrics.

Shawl
- Shawl is a covering for the head and shoulders often knitted or woven with very loose weave and used like a small blanket garment or throw.

Shawl Collar
- A Shawl Collar is a one piece continuous line turned down collar.

Shearling
- Shearling is very short wool or the (tanned) skin (with the wool still on it) of a yearling sheep. Sheath is a snug or close fitting dress.

Shears
- Long scissors are called shears.

Sheaths
- Sheaths are straight or fitted skirts ankle long often with a slit in the side, front, or back.

Sheen
- Sheen is a term describing a shiny fabric finish.

Sheepskin
- Sheepskin is a suede leather produced from a breed of sheep that grows hair instead of wool.
Sheer
- Sheer is a thin, transparent or semi-transparent fabric including such fabrics as chiffon, georgette, voile, or sheer crepe.

Sheer Curtains or Draperies
- Self-fabric is often used for sheer draperies which are designed to give depth and let light in while providing an attractive window dressing. Sheers are often lined with their same fabrics.

Sheer Seam Finish
- Raw edges often tend to fray, but clear sheer seam finish covers and protects those raw edges.

Shelf Bra
- A Shelf Bra is a bra made in the garment itself.

Sheel
- Shell is a sleeveless blouse or sweater.

Shell Jacket
- Shell Jacket is a snug military jacket.

Shell Pink
- Shell Pink is the color yellowish pink.

Shepherd's Check
- Shepherd's Check is a fabric black and white checkered pattern.

Shetland
- Shetland is a term referencing wool from Scottish Shetland sheep which has a coarse outer wool but a fine undercoat. Other wools include homespun, tweed, and cheviot.

Shibori
- Shibori is a technique of resist dying. Fabric is manipulated (folded, twisted, tied, etc.) so portions of the fabric do not absorb the dye. The result is custom fabric with streaks of its original color and the dyed color.
Shift
  • Shift is a dress characterized by loose fit.

Shimmy
  • Shimmy is another name for chemise.

Shirred Waist
  • Shirred Waist is a waistline of decorative gatherings made by sewing two or more parallel lines of stitching.

Shirred Border
  • Shirred Border is a technique aimed at producing a 3D look by inserting a border between two inner borders.

Shirring
  • Shirring is a technique for gathering fabrics using a sheering foot on your sewing machine.

Shirt
  • A shirt may also be known as a blouse (usually women’s shirts are called blouses and men’s shirts are called shirts) and consists of a garment covering the upper body and shoulders with a collar, sleeves, and button fasteners down the center of the front.

Shirt Jacket
  • Shirt Jacket is a shirt styled jacket.

Shirtdress
  • Shirtdress is a dress with buttons down the front like an extended shirt.

Shirting
  • Shirting is fabric used to make shirts. Shirting may be made of many different fabrics such as broadcloth or oxford.

Shirting Cottons
  • Shirting Cottons are cotton fabrics used to make shirts.

Shirtwaist
- Shirtwaist is a blouse like a man's shirt.

**Shocking Pink**
- Shocking Pink is the vivid color of pink.

**Shoddy**
- Shoddy is a poor quality wool fabric.

**Shoe**
- Shoe is footwear.

**Short Fiber**
- Short Fiber is a term describing thread fibers shorter than three inches but including thread pieces of microscopic lengths.

**Short Ruler**
- The sewing ruler is also known as a hem gauge, consists of a six inch metal ruler with a plastic slide pointer, and is used to measure and mark hem depth, buttonholes, etc.

**Shorts**
- Shorts are knee-length (or less) pants.

**Shot Taffeta**
- Shot Taffeta is an iridescent woven silk fabric whose color changes in the light.

**Shoulder Bag**
- Shoulder bag is like a handbag except with a strap over the shoulder a small accessory to carry personal items.

**Shoulder Pad**
- Shoulder Pad is a batting material (cotton, polyester, covered foam) used to add shape, crispness, and depth to the design of a jacket or shirt shoulder.

**Shoulder Veil**
- Shoulder Veil Term to describe the tier of veiling that is used to cover the face. It is also called Blusher Length. It is about 20" to 24" long.
**Shovel Hat**
- Shovel Hat is a clergy hat with wide brim.

**Shower Curtains**
- Shower Curtains are a drapery designed for both ornamental and practical purposes. The curtain hangs inside the tub area and is intended to prevent water from a shower (bathtub shower) from getting on the floor and walls of the bathroom while someone showers. It may also have a decorative outer curtain (with or without topper) that hangs outside the tub as a bathroom decorative treatment.

**Shrimp Pink**
- Shrimp Pink is the color of deep pink.

**Shrinkage**
- When washed and dried, or exposed to moisture, many fabrics tend to shrink. The threads actually decrease in length and width causing the weave to decrease in size and often distort its shape. To overcome this problem, it is recommended that you preshrink all fabrics not clearly marked (Do Not Preshrink). Always follow the manufacturer's guidelines.

**Shrug**
- A Shurg is a small loose fitting waist length jacket.

**Siggy Quilt**
- How do you make a Siggy Quilt? Get a group of people to participate in making a quilt. Each person signs a quilt block and fills any other personal information of interest in the block. People can record common interests, locations, events, just about anything you desire. The personalization is usually done with permanent marking pen, but can be embroidered. This makes a great friendship project.

**Sightline**
- How do you line up fabric for sewing? Marks on the throatplate, needleplate, or presser foot serve as guides to help sew evenly. These are called sightlines.

**Signet Ring**
• Singnet Ring is a piece of jewelry.

**Signature**
- Signature is a personal identifier also called "Siggie" on quilts.

**Silk**
- Silk is a fabric produced from the cocoon of the silk work in Asia (primarily China).

**Silk Broadcloth**
- Silk Broadcloth is a type of fine silk with a small rib.

**Silk Gauze**
- Silk Gauze is a super fine expensive fabric (40hpi).

**Silk Georgette**
- Silk Georgette is a popular lining material for velvet and chiffon garments.

**Silk Hat**
- Silk Hat is a plush man's formal hat.

**Silk Ribbon Embroidery**
- Silk Ribbon Embroidery is a special hand embroidery technique using silk ribbon.

**Silk Thread**
- Thread made of silk fibers (expensive but great sheen).

**Silk Ties**
- Silk Ties are a traditional man's accessory worn around the neck and tied in a knot at the front of the collar as part of a suit, shirt, and tie combination.

**Silkaline**
- Silkaline is a fabric with a silk like finish.

**Silver**
- Silver is the color of medium gray.
**Simulated Linen Fabrics**
- Simulated Linen Fabrics are woven fabrics made to look like linen - made of synthetics, blends, cottons, or rayons.

**Singer**
- Singer is the best known name in sewing machines since 1850. It has dominated the home sewing market for most of that time watching its competitors fall by the wayside one after another. Isaac Singer built off the work of Elias Howe and others to create a truly practical sewing machine.

**Single Knit**
- Single Knit is a type of fabric such as Jersey which has a single layer of knit fabric as compared to the more stretchy double knit fabrics such as polyester double knit.

**Singlet**
- Singlet is an athletic jersey undergarment.

**Sisal**
- Sisal is a fiber called Sisal Hemp used in various items such as matting, handbags, ropes, cordage, and carpeting.

**SITD**
- SITD is an abbreviation for Stitch-in-the Ditch quilting.

**Sizing**
- Sizing is the standardization of patterns to garment fit varied to meet the needs of differing body shapes. It is also a term referring to a
substance used to stiffen fabric.

- **Sizing** is a starched finish providing crisp fabric stiffness. When manufacturers produce fabrics from various natural fibers including rayon, they add a starch-like finish to make the fabric look and feel crisp and new. Thus sizing produces a fabric with crispness, but without stiffness. This is called sizing and may be removed and adversely affected by washing. The sizing may dissolve in water and steam.

**Skant**
- Skant are pants attached around the waist.

**Skein**
- Skein is a measure of thread length or quantity equal to one sixth hank. Skeins vary depending on type of fiber: cotton 8 meters, tapestry wool 9 meters, crewel wool 30 meters.

**Skewing**
- Skewing is a flaw in the fabric in which the fabric runs off grain and not perpendicular to the warp of the fabric.

**Ski Boot**
- Skis boot is special footwear designed for use with skies.

**Skimmer**
- Chemise or Skimmer is a straight unbelted dress (varying sleeves and lengths).

**Skirt**
- Skirt is a garment worn by women made with a waistline and flowing down over the legs without separate divisions such as in pants or skorts.

**Skirt Marker Gauge**
- The skirt hem marker is a tool used by dressmakers to mark the length of a skirt or dress. There are several versions of this tool including a chalk puffer and a solid chalk marker.

**Skivvy**
- Skivvy is another name for men's underwear.
Skort
- Skorts are shorts with a front flap like a skirt.

SKU
- SKU is the abbreviation for Stock Keeping Unit is the number used to identify specific items by style, color, and size.

Skullcap
- Skullcap is a snug fitting cap without a brim.

Sky Blue
- Sky Blue is the color of light blue.

Slacks
- Slacks is another name for pants, however, slacks tend to be a bit dressier version.

Slash
- Cutting into the fabric is called slashing. The cut may be even a small clip of the fabric.

Slashed Pockets
- Slashed pockets are pockets cut into the pants.

Slashline
- Slashlines are lines marked on patters used to adjust pattern sizes especially for taller or shorter subjects.

Slate
- Slate is the color of gray blue.

Slate Black
- Slate Black is the color of purple black.

Slate Blue
- Slate Blue is a grey blue.

Sleepwear
• Sleepwear is a general term referring to a variety of garments for nightclothes.

**Sleeve**
• Sleeve is a term referring to the enveloping of something. On a shirt, the sleeve is the portion of the shirt that envelopes or covers the arms. There are several different types of sleeves including: Short Sleeves, Long Sleeves, French Cuff Sleeves, Sleeveless, Bishop, Cap, Dolman, Fitted, Gauntlet, Gibson, Gigot, Leg O'Mutton, Poet's, Pointed, and Puff Sleeves.

**Sleeve Board**
• Ironing or pressing is an essential part of sewing. Many people think of an ironing board when talking about ironing, but there are a variety of tools to help make ironing easier and more effective. The sleeveboard is a pressing accessory designed for pressing sleeves. The tailor's ham (used for darts, sleeve caps, and curved seams), the seam roll (used for long seams without seams), and the clapper (used to flatten collars, pleats, and facings) are three other very useful pressing tools.

**Sleeve Head**
• Sleeve Head is the layer of fabric shaping extending into the sleeve called a header.

**Sleeve Roll**
• The sleeve roll is another name for a seam roll or a pressing accessory used to help iron sleeve seams.

**Sleevelet**
• Sleevelet is a protective covering of the forearm.

**Slicker**
• Slicker refers to raincoat material like oilskin.

**Slide**
• A quilt sleeve is a strip of fabric on the back of a quilt designed to hand the quilt on a rod passed through the sleeve. A sleeve is also a part of a garment though which the arm passes.

**Slim Fit**
• Form Fitting also known as Slim Fit describes a garment style that is straight to the ankle except for a curve around the hips.

**Slim Skirt**
- Slim Skirt is a type of skirt characterized by its close body fit that does not actually hug the body but allows the skirt to gently glide against the body while the wearer walks or moves while highlighting the natural body contours producing an elegant slimming effect.

**Slip**
- Slip is an underskirt which may have an elastic waist or be a full length under-dress with shoulder straps. Slips are generally made of lightweight slick finished materials. Slips may have be full or half slips (under-skirt only) and may or may not include bra.

![Image of slips](image_url)

**Slip-Baste**
- Slip-Baste is a technique of hand sewing of basting using a slip stitch.

**Slip-on**
- Slip-on refers to any garment that is easily "slipped" or put on and off: pullover, pull up, and similar garments.

**Slip-Over**
- Slip-over refers to clothing that is pulled over the head like a pullover sweater.

**Slipper**
• Slipper is a shoe that easily slides on and off without laces or other fasteners.

**Slipper Satin**
• Slipper Satin is a shoe fabric with shiny satin finish of various colors.

**Slipstitches**
• In hand sewing a small stitch may be used to secure folded edges to a flat surface.

**Slit**
• An opening in a seam commonly found in skirt side seams, back seams, or bottom seams is called a slit.

**Sloper**
• When designing a pattern, a sloper is created to provide a preliminary fitting piece for the torso. The sloper is a trial pattern and may be made of muslin or other inexpensive material. The sloper may be created by tracing off a paper pattern onto the muslin, by free hand design (tracing body features with some trial and error), or my use of some type of computerized design software. The purpose of creating a sloper is to provide a perfectly fitting pattern.

**Slot Seam**
• Slot Seam is a special hidden pocket sewn into a slot in the seam so that is not noticeable.

**Slouch Hat**
• Slouch Hat is a flexible felt hat with wide brim.

**Smock**
• Smock is a large usually loose fitting over shirt used to protect clothing from exposure to dirt -- protective over cloak.

**Smock Frock**
• Smock Frock is an outer garment worn by workmen.

**Smocking**
• Smocking is decorative needlework (handwork) embroidery which produces consistently spaced gathers in a honeycomb design where
the fabric is evenly folded and sewn.

**Smoke**
- Smoke is the color of pale blue.

**Smoking Jacket**
- Smoking Jacket is a short robe.

**Snap-brim**
- Snap-brim is a hat with upturned brim front and back.

**Snaps**
- Snaps are fastening devices made metal or plastic where a male piece attaches (snap) to a female piece attached to separate garment pieces.

**Snips**
- Small thread cutters that usually look like scissors are called snips. Whenever you want to trim threads, you snips are a quick easy way to cut the threads.

**Sock**
- Sock is a garment used to cover and protect your feet.

**Software**
- Software is the program or data stored on memory devices (floppy disc, CD, Design Card, Flash Drive, Memory Stick, etc.).

**Soleplate**
- A steam iron has a metal (formica plated) botton called a soleplate from which the heat and moisture for pressing comes.

**Solid**
- Fabric that is the same color all over (no designs or differing colors) is said to be a solid or solid fabric.

**Solleret**
- Solleret is a flexible steel shoe worn with a suit of armor during the Middle Ages.
Solution-dyed
- Prior to extrusion of fibers in the manufacturing of yarns and threads, a dye solution is added to the spinning solution producing a color fast fiber which can then be made into thread or fabric.

Sombrerio
- Sombrerio is a large brimmed Mexican hat.

Sorrel
- Sorrel is the color of orangish brown.

Soutache
- Soutache or Ribbon Lace is a type of embroidered ribbon or fine cording lace over a net background.

Spaghetti Straps
- Spaghetti Straps are thin tubes of fabric (straps) to hold the bodice in place called spaghetti straps by comparison to spaghetti. Spaghetti Straps are small straps or strips of cloth which extend from front of the dress over the shoulder to the back or wrap around the neck.

Spandex
- Spandex is a synthetic fiber mostly of polyurethane fibers that is very flexible and elastic.

Sparkle
- Sparkle is a jewelry term describing the appearance of a diamond in terms of its Brilliance and Dispersion or Fire.

Specialty Fill
- Specialty Fill is stitch patterns used for filling stitch areas in a design.

Specialty Threads
- Specialty Threads are threads or cording with special applications including threads made of rayon, metallics, and nylon and used to produce decorative effects.

Specifications ( Specs)
- Specifications are production measurement details required for construction also known as Specs.
**SPI**
- SPI is an abbreviation for stitches per inch (stitch length or stitch density). SPM is the abbreviation for stitches per minute (speed of sewing).

**Spinneret**
- Spinneret is a devise used in the spinning process of the manufacturing of fibers. The device has holes through which fibers are forced or extruded in various sizes.

**Split Neckline**
- A Split Neckline is a round neckline with a center cut shaped like a "V".

**SPM**
- Spm means stitches per minute or the speed of the sewing machine.

**Sponge Cloth**
- Sponge Cloth is a highly porous woven fabric.

**Spool**
- Thread is wound on hollow tubes or wooden holders called spools. Spools may be made from wood, plastic, cardboard tubing, and may be shaped as cones, fat or skinny, or other configuration.

**Spool Blocks**
- Spool Blocks are quilt blocks that look like a spool of thread constructed from four triangle shaped pieces of fabric.

**Spool Pin**
- The upper thread is placed on the spool pin or the post that holds thread spools. The thread is drawn from spool as it rotates from the spool pin.

**Spool Quilt Design**
- Spool Quilt Design is a quilt design that looks like a bow tie at an angle or a tilted thread spool.

**Sport Elastic**
- Sport elastic is a special wide, thick, and strong elastic used in sports garments. It is made with unbraided rows or grooves designed for
seaming through the channels.

**Sportswear**  
- Sportswear is clothing worn by athletes during their sports activities.

**Sport-weight Yarns**  
- Sport-weight Yarns are yarns used for production of durable fabrics used for sportswear.

**Spot Color**  
- Spot Color are colors printed as solids or halftones (uniform dots of secondary shade of same color).

**Spray**  
- Spray is a term referring to a cluster of flowers (or decorative beading) often worn as a headpiece and sometimes on the side of the head as a Side Spray.

**Spray Adhesive**  
- Spray adhesive is a spray on fabric glue used to temporarily attach fabrics, pattern pieces, etc. together. Brand: Pattern-Sta™.

**Spun Polyester**  
- Spun Polyester is spun yarn that uses tiny fibers of synthetic polyester spinning it together to form threads much like the making of cotton candy.

**Spun Rayon**  
- Spun Rayon is a fabric like long fiber cotton or wool fabrics. It may be blended with cotton. It is characterized as durable, washable, various weights, various colors, etc.

**Spun Yarn**  
- Spun Yarn is yarn made of very short staple fibers which have been twisted together to form a single strand.

**Spunlace Nonwoven**  
- Spunlace Nonwoven is special synthetic fabric used as a synthetic leather, medical and sanitary garments.

**Square**
• A square a design, shape, or drawing where all sides are equal and all angles are ninety degrees.

**Squaring Up**  
• Squaring Up is a technique for making fabric edges straight and square, it also refers to squaring a quilt top so that all four corners are ninety degree corners.

**Square Knot**  
• A square knot is a knot usable in many different settings (with rope, string, or thread). You have two threads. Take the left and place it over and wrap it around the right thread. Then cross the right thread in front of the left thread and bring it through the loop. Pull tight.

**Square Neckline**  
• A square neckline looks like half a square and has an open yoke. Square Neck is a type of neckline forming the squared shape it the front and/or back of the dress.

**Squishie**  
• Squishie is slang referring to the envelope containing fabric wrapped in plastic when sent to others.

**Stability**  
• How well does the fabric keep its shape and resist sagging, stretching, or pulling out of shape? The degree the fabric keeps its shape is called stability or fabric stability.

**Stabilizer**  
• The opposite of flimsy and unstable is stabilized. Whenever stitching on a fabric is threatened by the risk of instability, a special stabilizer fabric is fastened to the fabric being sewn and the sewing proceeds. After sewing is complete, the stabilizer may be cut away, torn away, or washed away depending on its type. Stabilizer is essential in all embroidery, some buttonholes, and certain lightweight fabrics. Common types of stabilizer include: cut-away, tear-away, water-soluble (Sulky or Super Solvy), and heat-soluble (Heat-Away). Following sewing all that is left is the stiffness under the sewing.

**Stack and Slash**  
• Stack and Slash is a technique of layering fabric pieces for cutting and rearranging them for sewing.
Stack N Whack
- Stack and Whack is a quilting technique where fabrics are layered in a stack. The stack of fabric pieces are then cut and sewn to for a kaleidoscope effect.

Stained Glass
- Stained Glass is a type of quilt designed to resemble a stained glass window pane.

Stammel
- Stammel is a wool fabric with bright red color.

Stand
- Stand is the portion of a collar that stands beside the neck.

Staple
- Staple is a term referring to the length of something. Staple is a term referring to the length of fibers. A short staple thread is a weak and low quality thread. Long staple thread is better thread. Long Staple polyester and cotton threads are among the best sewing threads.

Staple Fiber
- Staple Fibers describes the length of fiber strands. Short staple fibers will run from one half to eighteen inches long, while long staple fibers may run from eighteen inches to a continuous filament. A group of fibers twisted together form a yarn and when woven or knitted form fabric. Common staple length of fibers will be cut from one and a half to eight inches long. The longer the initial strand or staple - the better thread it makes.

Starch
- Starch is a substance applied to fabric to make it stiff.

Stash
- A Stash is a fabric collection.

Static Stickers
- Static Stickers are transparent stickers that are fastened to rulers to
serve as guides.

**Stay**
- Have you ever noticed how fabric tends to slip away while you are sewing two pieces together or how the fabrics you line up in front of the needle seem to creep out of line before you finish sewing? What frustration. When you fasten two fabrics together temporarily to hold the in place, it is called stay. This is very similar to basting. Instead of merely holding the fabric temporarily for a finished hem or seam, stay remains to keep the fabric in place even after you finish sewing. Stay may be achieved with a double sided tape known as stay tape or by stay stitches.

**Stay Tape**
- Stay Tape is a two sided tape used in place of stay stitching to give added support and shape to a garment piece.

**Stayed Seam**
- When a seam is reinforced prior to sewing with stay stitching or stay tape, it is said to be a stayed seam. Stay provides added support for the seam helping the garment retain its proper shape.

**Staystitch**
- Many seams have a tendency to stretch when sewn. Collars and necklines are common problems areas. Sew a row of stitches for these curved areas that tend to stretch about 1/8 inch inside the permanent stitching line. This stitch row "Stays" the fabrics or fastens them together so they will lay flat and the final stitching will be effective.

**Steam Iron**
- Steam Iron is a pressing tool that applies heat and/or steam to a garment or fabric to press it.

**Steaming**
- Steaming is a technique for pressing without actually making direct contact with the garment or fabric but by applying steam or shots of steam (hot vaporized water) from a steamer machine.

**Steel Blue**
- Steel Blue is the color gray blue.
Stencils
• Stencils are templates used to mark designs.

Step-in
• Step-in is clothing that you can step into such as overalls.

Sticky Back Stabilizer
• When doing machine embroidery, it is essential to stabilize the fabric by putting additional fabric under the piece being embroidered. One popular technique is to use Sticky Back Stabilizer which has a paper side protecting an adhesive surface. Hoop the Sticky Back Stabilizer and carefully cut away or tear away the paper covering exposing the adhesive layer. Next, take your fabric to be embroidered and carefully lay it on top of the sticky back adhesive and smooth it out. The Sticky Back Stabilizer holds the embroidery fabric in place during sewing. After sewing, cut the stabilizer off the finished piece.

Stiletto
• Stiletto is a sharp knife.

Stippling
• Stippling is a technique of free hand sewing aimed at adding texture to the surface. Some sewing machines have a mock stippling stitch.

Stitch
• The United States Patent office has recorded thousands of stitches sewn by hand and by machine. A stitch is defined as threading fastening fabric together.

Stitches Per Inch
• Stitches Per Inch is abbreviated SPM.

Stitch & Stretch Elastic
• Stitch & Stretch Elastic is a special type of elastic designed to be sewn in and then have the elastic thread pulled to stretch it.
**Stitch In The Ditch**
- This has nothing to do with getting your new car stuck in the mud. This is a great technique used when joining garment pieces. Collars, cuffs, waistbands, and other pieces can be sewn together without the stitching appearing on the front of the garment using understitching. This technique is accomplished by stitching in the seam well formed by the joint. Stitch in the ditch sews a seam very close to the seam allowance or even the seam itself to hold it down.

**Stitch Length**
- Stitch length is the distance between needle penetrations along a stitch line. Fine stitches have more stitches per inch, and basting stitches have very few stitches per inch. Average sewing stitch length will range from 11 to 12 stitches per inch, while a basting stitch might only have four or fewer stitches per inch.

**Stitch Selector**
- Stitch Selector is the device on your sewing machine used to choose what stitch your machine will produce. You may have a button, lever, knob, or computer controlled selection device. If you choose a straight stitch with your selector, expect the machine to produce a straight stitch.

**Stitch Tension**
• When stitches form thread is brought together, wrapped by the needle and hook, and pulled tight to finish the stitch. This pulling is called tension. Like a tug of war across a fabric stream the upper thread team pulls up and the lower bobbin thread team pulls down. When the pull is the same the actual grab or knot of the threads occurs hidden between the fibers of the fabric. In the bobbin area, tension is created as the thread leaves the bobbin and moves under a flat spring in the bobbin carrier. The upper tension is created as the upper thread flows through the tension discs. If the upper pull is stronger than the lower pull, the sewer will notice little knots or loops of bobbin thread pulled to the top of the fabric. If the bobbin tension is stronger than the upper tension, little know or loops of upper thread will bunch up underneath the fabric. Another way to describe this pull is as resistance on the flow of the thread. The thread guides, take up spring, needle bar, and especially the tension discs create resistance on the flow of thread. The same occurs in the bobbin area. The upper resistance and the lower resistance must balance to form a proper stitch. It is important to remember that anything that increases or decreases the resistance or pull will affect the quality of the stitches. If you use poor quality threads, it will adversely affect the quality of the stitches. If you change the size of thread, it will change the tensions and affect the stitches.

**Stitch Witchery**

• Stitch Witchery is bonding material used in applique and iron on applications.

**Stitchable Interfacing**

• Stitchable Interfacing is sewn in interfacing as compared to interfacing that is ironed on.

**Stitch-Length Selector**

• Stitch Length Selector is the knob, button, lever, or other device on the sewing machine used to alter the length of stitches.

**Stitch-Width Selector**

• Stitch Width Selector is the knob, button, lever, or other device on the sewing machine used to alter the width of stitches.

**Stock**

• Stock is a clerical band or scarf worn about the neck.
**Stock Designs**
- Stock Designs are designs available for Embroidery.

**Stock Keeping Unit**
- SKU is the abbreviation for Stock Keeping Unit is the number used to identify specific items by style, color, and size.

**Stockinette**
- Stockinette is bandage and infant wear fabric made of soft elastic cotton.

**Stocking**
- Stocking is another name for sock and refers to protective fabric footwear.

**Stock Lot**
- Stock Lot means the number of individual pieces of inventory such as the number of coats.

**Stogie**
- Stogie is a rough and touch shoe.

**Stole**
- Stole is a robe especially worn by clergy usually with ornate decoration.

**Stop Motion or Clutch Wheel**
- On many sewing machines there is a small silver dollar sized wheel or knob next to the hand wheel of the machine. When you are ready to wind a bobbin, you turn this knob to release the hand wheel and bobbin winding mechanism from the rest of the machine drive. Under this knob is a Stop Motion or Clutch Wheel that when tight causes the drive of the sewing machine to engage and when loosed drives only the bobbin winder mechanism.

**Storage**
- Where to you put your bobbins, presser feet, tweezers, snips, and such essential items so they are close at hand and won’t get lost? Many sewing machines have neat storage compartments built into the sewing machine to hold these items. Bernina Artisa sewing machines come with beautiful clear cover cases that can be set
behind the sewing machine or out of the way.

**Store Codes**
- Store Codes are numbers or letter used to identify individual items, personnel, or locations within a retail store chain.

**Stovepipe**
- Stovepipe is a distinctive silk hat.

**Straight Legs**
- Pants with legs that are the same from ankle to waist are called Straight Legs.

**Straight of Grain**
- The straight of the grain refers to the lengthwise or crosswise grain of fabric in contrast to the bias or diagonal of the fabric. Simply the straight of the grain is the opposite of the bias.

**Straight Pins**
- Straight pins are vital for laying out patterns and fabric for proper sewing. They come in various sizes (extra-thin, extra-long, and magnetic). The best dressmaker pins have large glass heads.

**Straight Skirt**
- A Column Skirt or Straight Skirt or Pencil Skirt is a skirt without a flare or fullness at the hem or waistline.

**Straight Stitch**
- When the needle falls below the needle plate and begins its rise back upward, the sewing machine hook moves behind the needle in the small groove called the scarf. The hook snags the small loop of thread formed there and pulls the thread around the bobbin thread. Both upper and lower threads are pulled taught to form a stitch. When this is repeated again and again without altering the needle position, it creates a running or continuous line of stitches called the straight stitch. In 1846 Elias Howe invented the first sewing machine, and for about one hundred years home sewing machines were limited to the straight stitch. Most straight stitch machines had a needle place and presserfoot with only one hole in them through which the
needle passed. Fabric was fully supported on all sides. With the advent of the zig zag sewing machine, the standard sewing needle plate and presser foot had a new oval shaped hole so the needle could pass on one side and then on the other unobstructed. The result is that fabric is now only supported on the front and back. Certain fabrics may tend to bounce or sag in this larger hole. To get the best straight stitch, move the needle position to the left position for straight stitching. The fabric is now supported on three sides significantly reducing sagging and fabric bounce and improving the straight stitch. If you are going to do a lot of straight stitching, you might change out the needle plate for a straight stitch needle plate and the presser foot the same.

**Straight Stitch Foot**
- Straight Stitch Foot is a presser foot with a single hole in it for the needle to rise and fall while sewing a straight stitch.

**Straighten Fabric**
- Fabric is typically sold by the yard and cut with scissors or rotary cutter, but often these cuts are not exactly straight with the grain of the fabric. To straighten the fabric for quilting, use a quilting ruler and trim the fabric using the ruler to square the fabric. On drapery fabrics pull a crossgrain thread to identify the straight of the goods.

**Straightjacket**
- Straightjacket is a cloth garment used as a constraining device for individuals that are out of control.

**Strapless**
- Strapless or Bustier is a type of bodice without straps or sleeves.

**Street Length**
- A skirt that whose hem is street length is a skirt that falls below the knees.

**Stretch**
- Stretch is the amount of give in a fabric. Woven fabric grain has the least stretch. Woven fabric crossgrain has more stretch than the grainline. The diagonal or bias of the fabric has the most stretch.

**Stretch As You Sew**
- Stretch As You Sew is a technique of attempting to pull back or
stretch the fabric while sewing austenstibly to make a stretchier seam, but this technique is not recommended for many reasons. First, it tends to break needles which can be dangerous. Second, it tends to distort the natural character of the fabric itself.

**Stretch Needles**
- Stretch Needles are needles designed to sew on stretch or knit fabrics - recommended ballpoint needles.

**Stretch-Stitch**
- Stretch-Stitch is a reinforced stitch which sews two stitches forward and one stitch backward.

**Strike-off**
- Strike-off is a sample or length of fabric used to test the fabric: pattern repeat, registration, and design.

**String Piecing**
- String Piecing is a quilting technique utilizing randomly joined fabric pieces of similar size together to form a larger piece, which in turn is sewn to another or cut into smaller pieces for squares or applique'.

**Strip**
- Strip is a piece of fabric cut into a strip.

**Strip Piecing**
- Strip Piecing is the technique of cutting strips of fabric, sewing these strips together, and stacked for cutting with a rotary cutter to reveal presewn strips.

**Strip Set**
- Strip Set is the collection of strips forming the basis for the quilt (2 strips of one fabric plus one of another might be a strip set for a 9 patch block).

**Stroke**
- The stroke of a fabric is the length that can be stitched without
stopping.

**Strophium**
- Strophium is an undergarment worn in antiquity long before the bra.

**Stuffing**
- Stuffing is the filling or batting used between the quilt top and quilt back; the filling for pillows, dolls, seating, etc.

**Suede**
- Suede is the process of producing a velvet nap effect, or a fabric with this type of finish.

**Sulky Thread**
- Sulky is a brand of thread sold in many sewing shops.

**Summer Quilt**
- Summer Quilt is a finished quilt with top and back, but no filling.

**Surah**
- Surah is a lightweight silk fabric with a fine twill lines best used in vest fronts and ties because it lacks durability.

**Surplice Top**
- Surplice Top or Wrap Top is a bodice made with cross wrapped fabrics.

**Suspenders**
- Suspenders are devices to hold pants in place made like straps over the shoulders sometimes attached together in the back and other times consisting of two separate straps.

**Swag**
- Swag is a drapery or window dressing style in which the fabric drapes down in neat folds from in a semi circular fashion from the ends to the middle. Swags are often used with Jabots for formal window dressings.

**Swap**
- Swap is a program in which participants share the production of a quilt by providing a single block.
Swatch
- Swatch is a small sample piece of a fabric.

Sweatpants
- Sweatpants are athletic wear designed to be worn during exercise activities and to promote perspiration. They are generally made with a loose fit and with soft cotton fabric.

Sweater
- Sweater is a garment intended to provide warmth and worn over regular clothing. There are several different types cardigan, jersey, jumper, pullover, etc.

Sweep
- Sweep is a term defining the circumference of a hem.

Sweep Train
- Sweep Train is a very short train or trailing portion of a gown that just brushes the floor and is common of gowns that are slim fit. (Brush Train) A Sweep Train is the shortest train barely sweeping the floor.

Sweetheart Neckline
- Sweetheart Neckline is a neckline with an open yoke shaped like the top half of a heart.

Swelled Edges
- A topstitching technique of sewing parallel to the edge is called swelled edges. (Use 1/4", 3/8", or 1/2" distance from finished edge.)

Swiss Cotton
- Swiss cotton is a seer crisp cotton fabric.

Synthetics
- Synthetics are fabrics, threads, and fibers that are manufactured chemically such as polyester.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

T Shirt
- T Shirts is a recreational shirt with short sleeves with a ribbed collar that looks like a T when laid flat.

Tabard
- Tabard is a short coat or cape worn by a knight over his armor. Today it refers to a sleeveless outer dress with side slits.

Tabby
- Tabby is a woven fabric of silk taffeta with a moire' finish.

Table Runner
- Down the center of a table a decorative cloth runs called a table runner.

Tablecloth
- Tablecloth describes a whole class of fabric table coverings which may also be called table linen or napkins.

Tack
- The term tack means to backstitch. It may also be applied to a temporary basting stitch when talking about a single location ie. Basting tack.

Tack Button
- Tack Button is a button used to fasten jeans.

Tacking Gun
- Tacking Gun is a tool to join the layers of a quilt together in a basting fashion.
Tacking
• Tacking is the technique of tying a quilt.

Taffeta
• Taffeta is a medium poly or blend fabric that gives a formal crisp stiff appearance suitable for wedding gowns and other formal gowns well known for its swishing while the wearer walks. Taffeta is a medium weight woven fabric with a slight rib. Silk taffeta is prized, but other fibers are good too.

Tailcoat
• Tailcoat is a dress coat with two long tapering tails.

Tailor's Chalk
• Marking fabric is an age old problem. A traditional solution is to use special (NO WAX) chalk to mark hems, transfer patterns, and mark stitchlines. Tailor's chalk is a great tool and comes with a chalk sharpener and holder to make marking easy.

Tailor's Chalk Sharpener
• Using tailor's chalk over time will dull the chalk. Solution: tailor's chalk sharpener - a metal blade used to sharpen the chalk.

Tailor's Chalk Wedges
• The wedge is the actual chalk itself. Replacement wedges are available to be placed in the handle.

Tailor's Ham
• If it looks like an ham, it is not necessarily a ham. At least not one you can eat. The tailor's ham is a pressing tool that actually looks like a ham. It is covered with a thick, heavy cushion and is used to press open seams. It is great for waistbands, collars, sleeve caps, and darts.

Tailor's Tack
• The Tailor's Tack is a marking technique using a hand needle and two
strands of thread. Using a contrasting color of thread (from the fabric) so it will be easily identified; insert the needle and draw the threads through all layers of the fabric, lining, pattern, etc. four of five inches and snip off the thread. Leave this long thread tail extending four to five inches on both sides of the fabric. Use the Tailor's Tack to mark darts, buttonholes, pattern locations, etc. Once you finish with the sewing, simply pull the threads out.

**Take Up Lever**
- On a sewing machine the thread flow is a vital concern that impacts the stitch quality. Each part of the upper threading system is essential (thread guide, tension disc, spring guide, and take up lever). If the thread misses even one of these vital parts the stitch is negatively affected or may not even form. Directly above the needle is the needle bar that moves in and out of the head of the sewing machine. A lever usually of shiny metal moves in concert with the needle and needle bar. When the needle goes down the lever goes down. When the needle moves up, the lever moves up. The function of this lever is to lift the thread up and let it down keeping the thread taught so it does not tangle and so the thread behaves as intended. This lever is therefore called the take up lever.

**Tallith**
- Tallith is a Jewish fringed shawl worn over the head and shoulders my men.

**Tam-o'-shanter**
- Tam-o'-shanter is a woolen cap worn in Scotland.

**Tan**
- Tan is the color of yellow brown.

**Tangerine**
- Tangerine is the color of orange.

**Tank Suit**
- Tank Suit is a one piece swim suit with broad shoulder straps.

**Tank Top**
- A Tank Top is a sleeveless short blouse with wide armholes.
**Tankini**
- Tankini is a two piece bathing suit with top like a tank top.

**Tap Pants**
- Tap Pants are snug fitting pants worn during dancing.

**Tapa**
- Tapa is a Pacific Island coarse cloth.

**Tape Measure**
- The dressmakers measuring tape is made of cloth with metal clips on both ends and measurements marked on both sides of the tape from reverse ends. It is flexible, but does not stretch so it is the most accurate tool to take body measurements. It commonly measures 60".

**Taper**
- Taper is a term that describes a reduction of width from top to bottom.

**Tapered Legs**
- Tapered Legs are pant legs which become increasingly narrow toward the ankles.

**Tapering**
- Tapering is the technique of reducing the size or width of a garment from top to bottom. A tapered shirt is a shirt that is cut in such a way that there is plenty of room for broad shoulders, but as the shirt tapers down toward the waist, it snugs the fit around a smaller waistline.

**Tapestry**
- Tapestry is a heavy woven rib fabric with fancy designs suitable for wall handings and upholstery.

**Tapestry Needles**
- Strong heavy duty needles with bunt points for work on canvas like needlepoint use special needles called Tapestry Needles.

**Tarboosh**
- Tarboosh is a Muslim man's red hat.

Tarlatan
- Tarlatan is a stiff sheer cotton fabric.

Tartan
- Tartan is a Scottish plaid twill fabric or garment.

Tasse
- Tasse is a piece of metal used to overlap with other to form a short skirt of armor.

Tattersall
- Tattersall is fabric with a square lined pattern on a solid background.

Tatting
- Tatting is handwork making lace by looping and knotting thread with a shuttle.

Taupe
- Taupe is the color brown gray.

Tea Length
- Tea Length is a gown or skirt hemmed at the shin or mid-calf of the legs.

Teal
- Teal is the color of teal blue.

Tear Away Shorts
- Tear Away Shorts are shorts designed for quick easy removal by releasing side snaps or velcro fasteners.

Tear-Away Stabilizer
- Whenever there is a need to stabilize the fabric against fabric bounce, such as during machine embroidery, there is a need for stabilizing materials. These materials include a wide variety of products including Wash Away, Cut Away, Sticky Back, and Tear-Away Stabilizer. Tear-Away Stabilizer is hooped with the fabric to be embroidered and sewing. After sewing, the materials are unhooped, and the stabilizer is gently torn away from the embroidered piece.
**Teddy**  
- Teddy is a one piece undergarment worn by women.

**Teeth**  
- The pointed tops of the feeddogs are called feeddog teeth.

**Template**  
- A template is a pattern used to help make a part of quilt block, or other project. Templates may be made of plastic, cardboard, or other firm material. It is like a pattern, except that a pattern is commonly made on paper.

**Template Plastic**  
- A soft plastic is used to create a template to draw designs.

**Tencel®**  
- Tencel ® is a brand of Lyocell which is a cellulose fiber used in clothing manufacture.

**Ten-gallon Hat**  
- Ten-Gallon Hat is the traditional cowboy hat.

**Tennies**  
- Tennies is a nickname for sneakers or tennis shoes.

**Tennis Shirt**  
- Tennis Shirt is a T shirt often called a polo shirt with collar and two buttons closing a V neck collar.

**Tennis Shoe**  
- Tennis Shoe is a low cut flexible shoe used for playing tennis.

**Tension**  
- When stitches form thread is brought together, wrapped by the needle and hook, and pulled tight to finish the stitch. This pulling is called tension. Like a tug of war across a fabric stream the upper thread team pulls up and the lower bobbin thread team pulls down. When the pull is the same the actual grab or knot of the threads occurs hidden between the fibers of the fabric. In the bobbin area, tension is created as the thread leaves the bobbin and moves under a
flat spring in the bobbin carrier. The upper tension is created as the upper thread flows through the tension discs. If the upper pull is stronger than the lower pull, the sewer will notice little knots or loops of bobbin thread pulled to the top of the fabric. If the bobbin tension is stronger than the upper tension, little knows or loops of upper thread will bunch up underneath the fabric. Another way to describe this pull is as resistance on the flow of the thread. The thread guides, take up spring, needle bar, and especially the tension discs create resistance on the flow of thread. The same occurs in the bobbin area. The upper resistance and the lower resistance must balance to form a proper stitch. It is important to remember that anything that increases or decreases the resistance or pull will affect the quality of the stitches. If you use poor quality threads, it will adversely affect the quality of the stitches. If you change the size of thread, it will change the tensions and affect the stitches.

**Tension Discs**
- Before the upper thread goes to the take up lever and on to the needle, it must go through two metal discs called tension discs. When the presser lever is up, a pin pushes through a shaft in the tension assembly reducing tension or pressure of the tension discs on the thread. When the presser lever is down, the metal discs press together with the thread between them forming upper tension. These metal discs are called tension discs.

**Tension Selector**
- A selector (dial, lever, or computerized button) is used to increase or decrease the amount of pressure the tension discs press against the thread. This selector is called the tension selector.

**Tension Spring**
- Inside the tension assembly is a spring that pushes the tension discs together based on the settings from the selector.

**Tent Stitch**
- Tent Stitch is a hand stitch with a diagonal stitch over one canvas thread.

**Tenter**
- Tenter is a frame for stretching milled cloth for dying without shrinking.
**Tentering**
- Tentering is the practice of stretching fabric over a frame for dying without shrinking.

**Terai**
- Terai is a sun hat with wide brim.

**Terra-cotta**
- Terra-cotta is the color brownish gray.

**Terry Cloth**
- Terry Cloth is an uncut pile fabric. It has small loops on both sides making a soft flush and absorbent finish suitable for towels.

**Tessellation**
- Tessellation is a quilting technique in which interlocking geometric shapes fill an entire quilt with no gaps.

**Test Seam**
- Whenever you first start sewing or when choosing a new decorative stitch, it is a good practice to sew a trial seam on scrap fabric to make sure tensions and stitch design are proper. This practice is known as a test seam.

**Textile**
- Textile is a term that relates to manufacture of threads, yarns, and fabrics.

**Texture**
- Texture is the roughness or smoothness of a surface and how it feels to the touch.

**Textured Yarn**
- Textured Yarn is a classification of man made yarns with continuous filaments.

**Thermolite**
- Thermolite is a DuPont polyester fabric coated to be slippery and durable to make it water and wind resistant.
**Thermoloft**
- Thermoloft is a DuPont insulation fabric.

**Thangles**
- Thangles® is a quilt block system to make multiple half square triangles.

**Thighs**
- Thighs are the portion of the body also known as hips and upper leg.

**Thimble**
- A metal, rubber, porcelain, or plastic thimble can make hand sewing faster, easier, and much less painful. Use the thimble to press the needle into the fabric by placing it on the middle finger of the sewing hand.

**Thinsulate**
- Thinsulate is the brand name for a synthetic material used for sound insulation that is specially processed to make it hypoallergenic and give it a low loft.

**Thong**
- Thong is a fitted garment with a strap to hold the garment in position: thong sandal (shoe), undergarment, or swimwear.

**Thread**
- Many different threads have been manufactured for a variety of different purposes. Thread is generally a finely processed string of a specified fiber used to sew either by hand or by machine. Natural fibers like cotton make great machine quilting threads. Synthetic threads include cotton-covered polyester, spun polyester, long fiber polyester, or nylon. The quality of thread you use will greatly affect the quality of your finished product. Generally, the best thread for most sewing is long fiber polyester thread. For quilting, the polyester thread will over time tend to cut into the natural fibers of the cotton quilt, therefore, it is recommended to use a high quality cotton machine quilting thread. Never ever use a hand quilting thread on a sewing machine.

**Thread Baste**
• Thread Baste is the practice of basting a quilt sandwich by hand sewing long stitches.

**Thread Chain**
• Thread Chain is thread that trails a seam whether it involve thread from a sewing machine or serger with multiple threads.

**Thread Clips**
• Small thread cutters that usually look like scissors are called snips or thread clips. Whenever you want to trim threads, you snips are a quick easy way to cut the threads.

**Thread Count**
• Thread Count is number of yarns in a square inch of fabric. The higher the thread count - the better the fabric.

**Thread Guide**
• On the sewing machine, the thread flow is crucial. The upper thread leaves the thread spool over spool cap, and proceeds through small guides to the tension discs, take up spring, and take up lever, and finally through another guide, and finally through the needle. These guides are called thread guides. Besure the thread is threaded properly through all the appropriate guides.

**Thread Loops**
• Thread Loops are strands of thread that form loops. These may appear in a multitude of situations including loops in the serger stitch or as excess thread on top or bottom of the fabric when there is poor tension.

**Thread Painting**
• Thread Painting, thread art, thread play, and thread ghosting are essentially the same creative activity in which thread is sewn onto a background fabric creating specific designs, textures, and art.

**Thread Snips**
• Thread Snips are small scissors designed to cut threads.

**Thread Spring Guide**
Thread Spring Guide or Tension Spring Guide or Check Spring is a spring in the upper thread line adjacent to the tension assembly used to take slack out of the thread during the sewing action of the needle bar moving up and down. If the machine is threaded without the thread guided through the check spring, the tensions will be messed up and the stitch quality will be poor.

**Thread Take-Up Lever**
- On a sewing machine the thread flow is a vital concern that impacts the stitch quality. Each part of the upper threading system is essential (thread guide, tension disc, spring guide, and take up lever). If the thread misses even one of these vital parts the stitch is negatively affected or may not even form. Directly above the needle is the needle bar that moves in and out of the head of the sewing machine. A lever usually of shiny metal moves in concert with the needle and needle bar. When the needle goes down the lever goes down. When the needle moves up, the lever moves up. The function of this lever is to lift the thread up and let it down keeping the thread taught so it does not tangle and so the thread behaves as intended. This lever is therefore called the take up lever.

**Throat Plate**
- Under, in front of, and behind the needle is one or two metal plates identified as needle plate and throat plate. These provide a solid surface for sewing and often are marked with the most common seam guide lines. The plate directly beneath the needle is called the needle plate, while the other is called the throat plate.

**Thread-Trace**
- Thread Trace is a method of making fabric using thread and basting techniques.

**Throw**
- Throw is a woman's scar or wrap.

**Tiara**
- Tiara is a jeweled crown or headband usually a half-circle of silver or gold decorated with pearls and beads.

**Ticking**
- Ticking is a cotton fabric characterized by its durability and satin surface. Mattresses, pillows, even upholstery use this fabric.
Tie Or Necktie
- Tie is a man’s garment accessory worn around the neck and tied in a knot at the front of the collar, however, it may also include other strips of cloth tied as a fastener (apron’s ties).

Tie Cinched Waist
- A Tie Cinched Waist is a waist that is pulled tight around the body with ties.

Tied Quilt
- A quilt that is hand tied instead of stitched is called a tied quilt.

Tiers
- Tiers is another word for layers and refers to layers of fabric overlapping each other such as around a skirt or other garment application.

Tiffany
- Tiffany is jewelry term describing a style of diamond setting popular for round solitaire diamonds.
- Tiffany is a fabric like cheese cloth.

Tights
- Tights are snug fitting panty hose.

Tiking
- Tiking is a cotton twill fabric.

Tile
- Tile is a tall silk hat.

Tin Hat
- Tin Hat is a helmet made of metal.
**Tinted Denim/Dirty Denim**
- Tinted Denim is denim made of yellow instead of white fibers leaving a more washed out appearance.

**Tippet**
- Tippet is a cape or shoulder cloth.

**Tissue**
- Tissue is thin sheer fabric or thin paper as in tissue paper.

**Tissue Paper**
- Tissue Paper is a fine thin paper uses for among other purposes patterns and gift stuffing or wrapping.

**Tissue Taffeta**
- Tissue Taffeta is a transparent fabric.

**Titian**
- Titian is the color brown orange.

**TKP**
- TKP is an abbreviation for Tamarind Kernal Powder used for sizing or thickener in textile manufacturing.

**Toboggan**
- Toboggan is a knit pullover hat.

**Toga**
- Toga is an ancient Roman outer garment that might be described as a loose fitting gown.

**Toile**
- Toile is a two color printed (red on white, black on white) fabric with sporadic scenes that look like pencil drawings.

**Toile de Jouy**
- Toile de Jouy is the original French name for Toile fabrics which are two color printed (red on white, black on white) fabrics (on cotton, linen, or silk) with sporadic scenes that look like pencil drawings.
Tolerance
- Tolerance is the amount of variance between the specified measurements and actual measurements and after sewing.

Tone on Tone
- Tone On Tone is fabric with varying shades of the same color in which the background is slightly tinted with various designs of the same color highlighted. Also called "Tonal Fabrics"

Top
- Top is an article of clothing worn on the upper body.

Top Boot
- Top Boot is a high leather boot.

Topcoat
- Topcoat is an overcoat.

Topping
- Topping is Facing fabric or material placed on top of hooped fabric to keep the surface from meshing down during embroidering. Also known as stabilizer.

Top Sider™
- Top Sider™ is the trademark for a line of casual shoes.

Top Stitch
- If it sounds like a duck, it must be a duck. Topstitching is exactly that -- stitching that appears on top of the finished fabric. This may be a simple utility stitch or a more decorative stitch.

Topee
- Topee is a tall hat originally made of beaver, but more recently of silk.

Topper
- Topper is an opera hat or a woman's loose outercoat.

Topstitched Seam
• A top stitching seam is a seam that uses finished stitching on the top of the fabric.

**Toque**
• Toque is a small woman's hat with no brim.

**Torchon**
• Torchon is lace made with fan-shaped designs forming a scalloped edge.

**TOT**
• TOT is an abbreviation for tone on tone fabrics which are fabric with slight shade variations between background and design features.

**Totally Stable**
• Totally Stable is a brand of iron on stabilizer used for machine embroidery and made by Sulky.

**Tow**
• Tow is broken or short fibers used in making yarn, twine, or stuffing.

**Toweling**
• Toweling is fabric used for towels.

**Toy**
• Toy is a Scottish headdress.

**T-pins**
• T-pins are pins used for sewing that are all metal with a sharp point on one end and a double bent T shape on the other. Generally, it is better to use large glass head pins when pinning for sewing or quilting.
Tracing Carbon
- Tracing Carbon is a special transfer paper like traditional carbon paper, but without its damaging characteristics when tracing or marking on fabric with a special tracing wheel.

Tracing Paper
- Tracing paper is used to copy pattern pieces to lay out usable guides for constructing garments.

Tracing Wheel
- Tracing wheels are handles with a wheel of prongs (teeth) to cut slight impressions through the tracing paper onto the fabric during the layout of the pattern.

Tracking
- Tacking numbers are the numbers used to monitor shipping and routing.

Tracksuit
- Tracksuit is clothing used by athletes while running track or doing sports activities.

Train
- Train is a flowing garment treatment attached to a formal gown or wedding dress and may be made in varying lengths and styles including: Brush, Cathedral, Chapel, Court, Detachable, Royal, Sweep, or Watteau.

Train and Split Train
- A Train is a trailing fabric treatment usually a part of a formal gown such as a wedding gown. A Split Train is a Train using two separate trailing fabric treatments.

Transfer
- Transfer is the technique of moving the markings from the pattern to the fabric so the fabric can be cut out and assembled.

Transparent Ruler
- Transparent Ruler is a ruler made of acrylic and used for measuring and cutting many different types of sewing projects.
Transparent Tape
- Transparent Tape is a common tape also known as invisible tape or scotch tape.

Transparent Thread
- This amazing disappearing thread also known as invisible thread or nylon monofilament thread is great to use wherever you don’t want to see the topstitching.

Trapeze Top
- A Trapeze Top is a tank top with a flared bottom.

Trapunto
- Trapunto is a technique using additional batting to produce raised areas in a quilting design giving dimensional features to the quilt block.

Treadle
- For many years sewing machines had no electric motors to drive their mechanical parts and make the machine work. There were two popular systems used to accomplish this power need: the treadle, and the hand crank. The Treadle sewing machine used a balance pedal system to turn a large wheel. A round leather belt went around the treadle wheel up to the sewing side of the sewing machine where it looped around a wheel on the sewing machine. It took “rhythm” to make it go, but once your got going the treadle sewing machine would whir right along sewing up a storm.
Treme'
- Trame', Tramme, or Tramming is a hand stitch which produces raised areas (dates back to the middle ages in Europe).

Trench coat
- Trench coat is a heavy outer coat like military over coats.

Triacetate
- Triacetate is a stronger form of acitate more resistant to heat, shrinking, and fading.

Triangle
- A triangle is a geometric figure that has three sides. Two of the more common triangles include the right triangle which has a 900 angle and an equilateral triangle which has three equal sides.

Tricorne
- Tricorne is a cocked hat.

Tricot
- Tricot is a knit fabric used for women's lingerie and lining. It is a warp knit with horizontal ribs. Fusible tricot is excellent interfacing. Chanel Tricot and World Chanel Tricot is a high fashion designed version of tricot. It is often featured among the highest fashion designs in the world.

Tricotine
- Tricotine is a sturdy suit material.

Trilby
- Trilby is a soft felt hat.

Trim
- To trim means to cut away excess fabric. Trimming is the cutting.

Trims
- Decorative lace, ribbon, fringe, and embroidery edging are called trims (or trim).
Trinsulate
• Thinsulate is a thermal insulation twice the R factor of similar polyester, down, or wool.

Triple Needle
• Triple Needle is a special decorative needle with a single shaft and three mounted needle tips each of which carries a different sewing thread.

Triple Sheers
• Triple Sheers are fabric that are thin but thicker and flatter than regular sheers.

Trompe l'oeil
• Trompe l'oeil is a term to describe landscape quilts.

Tropical Worsted
• Tropical Worsted are highly twisted wool yarns that are very light and airy.

Trouser
• Trouser is another word for pants.

True Bias
• True Bias is 45 degrees to the selvedge, but any diagonal cut 45 degrees to 60 degrees is still bias. Sometimes garments are include 60 degree bias fabric cuts to save of fabric use.

True Grain
• True Grain is 90 degrees selvage to selvage. When you tear fabric, the true grain of the fabric is 90 degrees along the length of the fabric (or across the crossgrain). While True Bias must be cut, True Grain may be torn.

Truing
• Truing is the technique of tearing the fabric to establish the True Grain of the fabric.

Trumpet Skirt
• Trumpet skirt is a skirt that is snug fitting at the hips and thighs,
remains straight toward the knees, and then flares out. (Also known as a Mermaid Skirt).

**Trunk(s)**
- Trunk are shorts worn for sports activities.

**T-Shirt**
- T-Shirt is a short sleeved or sleeveless cotton undershirt designed so that the sleeves appear to make a T with the body of the shirt.

**TSUS**
- TSUS is an abbreviation for the Tariff Schedule of the United States governed by the U.S. International Trade commission to assess import tax rates or duties.

**Tube**
- Tube is a garment shaped like a tube such as a tube top or tube socks.

**Tube Sewing**
- How do you do tube sewing? Take two strips of fabric and put them right sides together. Sew along both sides and turn the tube right side out. How do you do tube sewing?

**Tuck**
- A tuck is a decorative raised seam also called pin tuck. Tucks are used in heirloom and decorative sewing.

**Tufted Ballroom Bustle**
- Tufted Ballroom Bustle is a ballroom bustle which has ornate jeweled decorations attached to the bustle to add shape and distinction.

**Tufting**
- Tufting is tying quilts.
- Tufting is a technique for sewing or attaching special ornate decoration to garment by pulling together a small tuft and attaching or sewing the item.

**Tuille**
- Tuille is a piece of armor.
**Tulle**
- Tulle is a lightweight mesh with a fine hexagonal shaped netting commonly used for dance costumes and veils.

**Tulle Skirt**
- Tulle Skirt or Bouffant Gown is a puffy sheer skirt made of crisp stiffened nylon net, silk, or rayon.

**Tunic Style**
- The Tunic Style is a simple slip on sleeveless knee length (or longer) garment usually with a belt. It may be worn as an undergarment or as an over garment.

**Tunneling**
- Tunneling is the tendency of fabric to bunch up or pucker or pull together forming a hollow line under a zig zag stitch when the tension is too tight or the fabric lacks adequate stability to retain its shape. Solution loosen tension and/or apply stabilizer under the fabric.

**Turban**
- Turban is a headdress worn among Muslims.

**Turn of the Cloth**
- The portion of fabric hidden away or covered up on seams that are sewn wrong sides together and turned right-side-out and seams where the edge is turned over are called the turn-of-the-cloth.

**Turquoise**
- Turquoise is the color of light green blue.

**Turquoise Blue**
- Turquoise Blue is the color green blue slightly more blue than regular Turquoise.

**Turquoise Green**
- Turquoise Green is bluish green.
**Turtle Neck**
- A Turtleneck is a high collar commonly found on sweaters - high and snug fitting.

**Tussah silk**
- Tussah silk is a silk fabric from brownish fiber in plain weave and twill.

**Tutu**
- Tutu is a short ballerina skirt.

**Tuxedo**
- Tuxedo is a formal suit.

**Tweed**
- Tweed is a medium to heavy woolen fabric made with a twill weave--suitable for coats and suits.

**Tweeding**
- Tweeding is a hand sewing technique using two or more different colored threads in the needle.

**Tweezers**
- Tweezers are special scissor like tools used to pinch and pick up small things.

**Twill**
- Twill is a basic weave involving interlaced warm and filling yarns in a diagonal right side design.

**Twin Needle**
- Fortunately needles are not born they are made. This specialty needle is also known as the double needle. The twin needle is what it sounds like to needles joined together on a cross member and a shank that fits into the needle clamp. It is easy to sew straight and zig zag stitches with a twin needle, but remember when sewing zig zag you must narrow the zig zag setting to avoid striking the presser foot or needle plate with either needle. Twin needle also use two
upper threads, but only one bobbin thread.

**Twin Set**
- Twin Set is a set of garments worn together: pullover and cardigan.

**Twist**
- When yarns are twisted together during manufacturing process the way they join together is called twist. The twist may be to the right (S Twist) or left (Z Twist). Wool is usually S Twist, while cotton is Z twist. Twist is also measured (tpi) Turns Per Inch, or (tpm) Turns Per Meter, or (tpc) turns per centimeter. Thread is either twisted clockwise (S) or counterclockwise (Z).

**Two Piece**
- Two Piece describes a swim suit with top and bottom.

**Two Piece Sleeve**
- Two Piece Sleeve is a sleeve made of two separate sections one for the sleeve cap another for the under arm.

**Tying**
- Quilts with their top, backing, and filler may be fastened together by using a hand needle, drawing string through the quilt, and tying the string. This is called tying a quilt.

**Tying Knots**
- When tying a quilt together, a variety of knots may be used including the square knot.

**Type of Fabric**
- How can you tell what kind of fabric you have if it not labeled? First, you can look at the fabric and see its characteristics. If you are familiar with various fabrics, this works sometimes, but other times it possible to get fooled. Second, Try the test of fire. While not exact, the fire test works very well on the more pure fabrics. If the fabric is a blend, the test will reveal at least one of the ingredients. Acetate - (synthetic) melts, smells like vinegar, and leaves a black brittle substance behind. Acrylic - (synthetic) melts, but keeps on melting even after fire flame is removed. Leaves black residue with little or no odor. Cotton - (natural fiber) burns quickly with a yellow flame. It continues to burn leaving only a gray residue that smells like burnt paper. Linen - (natural) burns like cotton. Nylon - (Synthetic) melts
slowly leaving a gray residue and an odor like celery. Polyester (synthetic) burns slowing producing a black smoke, but little odor. Rayon (synthetic) burns quickly with a yellow flame and keeps burning leaving a gray residue that smells like burning paper. Silk (natural) sizzles and burns slowly with a flaky black ash that smells like burning hair or feathers. Wool - sizzles and burns like silk.

**Tyrolean Hat**
- Tyrolean Hat is a soft hat featuring a decorative feather.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

UFO
- UFO stands for Un-finished Quilt. Quilt tops that have not yet been backed, quilted, and edged are UFOs.

Ulster
- Ulster is an overcoat.

Ultrasuede
- Untrasuede® is a brand name synthetic fabric that looks and feels like suede.

Ultrex
- Ultrex is a lightweight ultrasuede fabric.

Umbre
- Umber is the color moderate brown or yellow brown.

Underclothing
- Underclothing is underwear.

Undercoat
- Undercoat is a jacket or coat worn under an outer coat.

Underdrawers
- Underdrawers are underwear.

Undergarment
- Undergarment is an article of clothing worn underneath outer garments.

Underlay Stitch
- Underlay Stitch are stitches placed under embroidery or finish sewing to stabilize the fabric.

Underlining
• Fabric that is attached to the wrong side of fashion fabric before seams are sewn is called underlining, backing, or mounting fabric. Underlining adds body to the fabric or garment.

**Underpants**
• Underpants are pants worn under outer clothing.

**Undershirt**
• Undershirt is a shirt worn under an outer shirt.

**Understitch**
• Along the edge of facing, around the under-collar, or under an embroidery design; stitching under the finished sewing while hidden from view insures stable fabrics for garment construction or embroidery sewing. This hidden sewing is called under-sewing or under-stitching. It may also be described as sewing on all but the top layer of fabric. Under-sewing prevents loss of shape due to irregular thread pull on the fabric.

**Understitched Seam**
• An Under-stitched Seam is a seam (running series or line of stitches) adjacent to (within 1/8th inch) or under a permanent seam. The under-stitched seam is used stabilize the fabric

**Underwear**
• Underwear is clothing worn under outerwear.

**Undies**
• Undies is slang for underwear.

**Uneven Basting**
• Uneven basting is hand basting to temporarily attach fabrics together.

**Uneven Plaid**
• Uneven Plaid describes vertical plaids and stripes that are not consistent.

**Uniform**
• Uniform is clothing worn to identify the wearer with specific group such a military or policing unit.
**Uniform Dress**
- Uniform Dress is formal wear worn to represent a specific group such as a military or policing unit.

**Union Suit**
- Union Suit is a one piece shirt and pants undergarment.

**Unit**
- Unit is the name given to part of a quilt block.

**Unitards**
- Unitards are a snug fitting stretchy single piece garment including feet, legs, torso, and arms.

**Universal Point Needle**
- Universal means it can be used on anything. Not exactly. While universal needles generally work on most fabrics, needles should always be matched with the thread and fabrics being sewn. Many knit fabrics do not do well with universal point needles because the point is a bit too sharp and keeps getting snagged on the knit fibers creating skipped stitches. For knit use a stretch or ball-point needle. Some fabric do better with a sharp needle (the universal is a little more rounded tip than the very pointed sharp), but generally you can use a universal needle with most non-knit fabrics. If you have questions, contact your local sewing machine dealer and ask them what they recommend. Universal needles also come in a variety of sizes: lower numbers are smaller larger numbers are larger diameter needles. (8,10,12,14, and 16 are most common).

**Unmentionable**
- Unmentionable are those personal garments worn as underwear.

**UPC**
- UPC is the abbreviation for Universal Product Code associated with Bar Code and Stock Keeping Unit (SKU).

**Upholstery**
- Upholstery is the method of covering furniture with fabric. The associated fabric is called upholstery fabric.

**Upholstery Needle**
• Upholstery Needle is a needle used to sew upholstery fabric onto furniture.

**Upland Cotton**
• Upland Cotton is a well known American cotton fiber.

**Uplift**
• Uplift is an archaic term for the design of a bra to lift and support the breasts.

**Upper Collar**
• Upper Collar is the portion of a collar that is visible.

**Upper Looper**
• A serger makes stitches by an upper looper, lower looper, and needles wrapping threads in special ways to form serger stitches. The upper looper is shaped like large number seven and moves back and forth as the needles move up and down.

**Utility Quilt**
• Any quilt designed and intended for general everyday use is called a utility quilt. It usually does not have highly intricate designs.

**Utility Stitches**
• Utility stitches are those stitches used for basic practical sewing applications including straight stitches, zig zag stitches, satin stitches, and blind hem stitch.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

V

V-Band
- V-Band Similar to a wreath, the v-band sits on the top of the head but dips to a v-shaped point onto the forehead.

Vaconne Velvet
- Vaconne Velvet is velvet fabric with burnt out patterns.

Vacus Hold
- Vacus Hold is the x-ray of containers looking for unauthorized objects inside.

Valencienes
- Valencienes is lace.

Vandyke
- Vandyke is a collar with wide edge.

Vanity
- Vanity refers to small personal items kept in a small handbag or a bathroom.

Variegated
- Variegated means having mixed colors which may come as streaks, marks, or patches generating a variety of different colors.

Veil
- Veil is a transparent mesh cloth worn by women over the head and shoulders often worn by brides. A more opaque veil is worn by Muslim women.

Veiling
- Veiling is fabric that is sheer.

Velcro
• Velcro® is the most popular brand of hook and loop tape that comes in strips, rolls, and dots of various sizes,

**Velcro Placket**
• A Velcro Placket is a finished opening in a garment with hidden velcro fasteners.

**Vellum**
• Vellum is a type of thin paper often used in layered applications such as invitations.

**Velour**
• Velour is a thick pile medium weight fabric that resembles velvet.

**Velvet**
• Velvet is a cut-pile medium fabric with a luxurious finish. Velvet is a thick napped soft cut pile fabric that has been popular in garments and home decor.

**Velvet Board**
• Velvet Board is a pressing tool specifically designed to use with velvet and other fabrics with pile.

**Velvet Satin**
• Velvet Satin is a velvet with a satin finish made with cut pile.

**Velveteen**
• Velveteen is a cut-pile woven cotton fabric that resembles Velvet.

**Venetian**
• Venetian is a fabric with good luster like satin (wool, cotton, or blend).

**Venise or Venice Lace**
• Venise or Venice Lace is a free standing lace made with cotton or rayon threads to create beautiful embroidery designs which are not attached to other background fabrics or netting.

**Vent**
• A vent is a cut in the garment fabric (finished or lined) to permit ease for adjacent parts such as a sleeve placket.
Verdant
- Verdant is the color green.

Vermilion
- Vermilion is the color reddish orange.

Vest
- Vest is a sleeveless under coat worn to augment an outfit. It may be part of formal attire or relaxation wear such as a sweater vest.

Vestment
- Vestment is a ceremonial attire or robe worn for ceremonial purposes.

Vicuna
- Vicuna is among the best wool made from a small South American relative of a camel. The yarn is super soft and very warm.

View
- View is a term describing the drawing or picture of the finished garment found on patterns. What a project will look like is called a view. Most patterns will show multiple views of their project based on choices made during construction.

Vinaceous
- Vinaceous is the color of dark red.

Vinegar
- Vinegar is a common household cleaner derived from fermented fruit such as apples. It is used for many different purposes including stain
removal.

**Vinyl**
- Vinyl is a tough flexible shiny substance (of synthetic chemistry produced resin polymer or plastic derived from ethylene and) used as the basic foundation material for plastics and bonded materials for coverings, clothing, many other applications.

**Vinyl-Coated Fabric**
- Naugahyde ® is a special vinyl covered fabric that is water resistant.

**Violaceous**
- Violaceous is the color violet.

**Violet**
- Violet is the color red blue.

**Virid**
- Virid is the color green.

**Viridescent**
- Viridescent is the color greenish.

**Viridian**
- Viridian is the color chrome green.

**Viridity**
- Viridity is the color of grass.

**Viscose**
- Viscose is a type of rayon (more common than cuprammonium a second type of rayon).

**Visor**
- Visor is the part of a cap that shades the eyes.

**Vitelline**
- Vitelline is the color of egg yoke yellow.

**Viyella**
• Viyella is a twill fabric blend of wool and cotton.

**V-Neck Shirt**
• V Neck or V Back is a shirt with an open yoke shaped like a "V" midway down the body.

**Voile**
• Voile is a woven fabric like cotton that is crisp and lightweight. It is similar to organdy and organza.
TERMS & DEFINITIONS

Wader
- Wader is a set of waterproof boots that come all the way up to the hip or even the waist.

Wadding
- Wadding is batting or fill.

Wadmal
- Wadmal is a coarse woolen used for protective coverings and warm clothes.

Wafflestomper
- Wafflestomper is a boot used for hiking.

Waistcoat
- Waistcoat is another name for a vest or a jacket that belted at the waist.

Waistline
- Waistline is the natural zone around the body just above the hips and below the chest where a belt is commonly worn. Waistline measurement is important for proper fit.

Waist Measurement
- Waist Measurement is the measurement of the natural waist which is about an inch above the belly button and is the smallest waist measurement.

Waist to Hem Measurement
- Waist to Hem Measurement is the measurement taken from your natural waistline to the bottom of the garment plus a hem allowance.
Note always wear the same undergarments and shoes while fitting as you intend when the wearing the garment.

**Wales**
- This is another name for the lengthwise grain of knitted fabrics.

**Walker**
- Walker is shoe designed for walking.

**Walking Foot**
- A walking foot is a specialized presser foot devise that pulls against the top of the fabrics in similar manner to the feed dogs beneath. Their purpose is to maintain an even flow of fabrics while sewing multiple layers of fabric. One might say the presser foot "walks" the fabric while it sews.

**Wall Hanging**
- Wall Hanging is a term referring to a quilt used for decorative accent and hung on the wall.

**Wall Quilt**
- Quilts designed and intended as decorative wall hangings are called Wall Quilts or Wall Hangings.
Walnut
- Walnut is the color reddish brown.

Waltz Veil
- Waltz Veil (Ballet or Princess Length Veil) is a veil that stretches about five feet in length and strikes at the knees.

Warbonnet
- Warbonnet is a ceremonial "hat" made of feathers and worn by American Indians.

Warm Colors
- Warm Colors are those colors that create the feeling of warmth (blacks, browns, tans, golds, and beige colors) including browns and brown toned colors.

Warm Up
- Warm Up is a suit of clothing used by athletes to prepare for competition.

Warp
- Another name for lengthwise grain is warp. The crosswise grain is also called the woof. This refers back to the warp and woof used in the actual weaving of the fabric. The wrap fibers are long and run the length of the fabric bolt or role. Weft are the threads running crosswise across the lengthwise grain.

Warp Knits
- Knit Warp is the lengthwise grain of a knit fabric.

Warp-print Taffeta
- Warp-print Taffeta is a fuzzy fabric.

Wash Away Interfacing
- Wash away interfacing is temporary interfacing to provide stability and body during construction of a project, but dissolves in water after sewing is finished.

Washaway Basting Tape
• Wash away basting tape is double sided tape used for basting that is water soluble and simple washes away.

**Washaway Stabilizer**
• Stabilizer is used in embroidery and garment construction to give the fabric body. Once the sewing is complete, stabilizer is removed by tearing it away, cutting it away, or by washing it away. Washaway stabilizer dissolves in water so that it literally disappears.

**Washaway Thread**
• Wash away thread is thread used like other threads when it is dry. It is most often used for basting. Once sewing is complete, the thread can be washed away because it is water soluble.

**Washed Silks**
• Washed Silks are silk fabrics that have been sandwashed.

**Waste Canvas**
• Waste Canvas is a fabric with starched threads used for thread work on non-even weave fabrics. After thread work is complete, the starch and excess threads may be removed by dampening and using tweezers.

**Watch Cap**
• Watch Cap is a snug fitting knitted military hat worn in stormy weather.

**Water Color Quilt**
• Like an impressionist watercolor painting a Watercolor Quilt is made of small squares of floral fabric designed like a painting.

**Water Repellent**
• Water Repellent refers to fabrics that shed water but allow air to pass through them.

**Waterproof**
• Waterproof is a term applied to fabrics that do not let water or air pass through them.

**Water-Soluable Marker**
• Mark Be Gone™ marking pen and similar products providesewers
with temporary marking capability that is water soluble and disappears after the marks are no longer needed.

**Waterspotting**
- Basting involves sewing a temporary line of stitches to fasten two or more fabrics together. Once the basting stitch is sewn, the finish stitch can eventually be sewn. The basting stitch should then be removed. This can be a hassle sometimes, but wash-away basting thread simply washes away and disappears forever. This type of thread actually dissolves in the wash leaving only the finished stitching.

**Watteau Train**
- Watteau Train is a trailing fabric treatment extending from the shoulders of the gown and flowing down and behind the gown, but seldom bustled.

**Wax Paper**
- Wax Paper is a special paper product with one side glazed with wax which makes it ideal for use in many crafting and sewing projects.

**Wearable Art**
- Clothing that is embellished or decorated is called Wearable Art.

**Wearable Ease**
- Wearable Ease is the difference between body and garment measurements
**Weave**
- Weave us the interlacing of threads or yarns to form fabric: Plain Weave, Twill Weave, Satin Weave, Cambric, Sateen, Warp, Weft or Filling.

**Webbing**
- Webbing is a material commonly used for belting and furniture web support.

**Wedding Band Collar**
- A wedding band collar is a ornate or sheer snug fitting neckline like a choker.

**Wedding Favor**
- Wedding Favor is a small token of appreciation or gift from a wedding couple to attendants at a wedding. Also known as Favors.

**Wedge**
- Wedge is a high heeled shoe in which the heel runs the entire length of the shoe.

**Wedge Point Needle**
- Wedge Point Needle is a sewing machine needle used for sewing on denim or leather.

**Weft**
- Weft (also known as filling) are the weaving threads that run crossgrain at ninety degree angle to the warp threads (shorter side to side threads).

**Weft Knit**
- Knit Weft is the crossgrain of a knit fabric.
**Well Of The Seam**
- When a seam is sewn on wrong sides and then turned right side out, a groove forms called the well of the seam or the groove of the seam.

**Wellington**
- Wellington is a boot with loose leather top.

**Weskit**
- Weskit is a type of vest.

**Western Shirt**
- A Western Shirt is a shirt with a distinctive yoke, cuff, and western styling.

**Wet Suit**
- Wet Suit is a suit of water resistant spongy rubber worn by divers.

**Wheat**
- Wheat is the color of light yellow or wheat yellow.

**Wheaten**
- Wheaten is a pale yellow.

**Whipcord**
- Whipcord is a worsted wool fabric with a tight twill resistant to stretching and wrinkling.

**Whipstitch**
- In hand sewing applique' seams run the needle and thread in and around the fabric looping the edge repeatedly-- this is called whipstitching.

**Whiskering**
• Whiskering is the distressing of the upper front of jeans to replicate normal wear.

**White**
• White is the color white which actually is the reflection of all color.

**White On White**
• White on White is fabric that is printed with white ink on white background fabric commonly called WOW.

**White Work**
• White Work is a technique that shows off the quilter's stitching skills by creating a design entirely with stitches usually on a solid fabric background like white. Blue Work, Black Work, Green Work, and Red Work are all terms describing the technique of using a single color thread for outline embroidery.

**Whole Cloth Quilt**
• Whole Cloth Quilt is like a double backed quilt where the quilt top is made of only large piece of fabric with no piecing, no embroidery, etc.

**Wholesale**
• Wholesale is the sale of goods from the manufacturer or distributor to the reseller or retailer who sells to customers.

**Wholesale Price**
• Wholesale Price is the price goods are sold to the reseller or retail merchant.

**Wickability**
• Wickability is the ability of a fabric to allow water to pass through it so evaporation takes place.

**Wide Legs**
• Wide Legs are pants with extra full cut legs.

**Wife-beater**
• Wife-beater is a cotton ribbed sleeveless undershirt.
**Wig**
- Wig is a manufactured head piece designed to resemble hair: it may be made from real hair or synthetic fibers.

**Wigan**
- Wigan is a stiff cotton fabric used for interlinings.

**Wiglet**
- Wiglet is a small wig used to improve a hairstyle.

**Wild Goose Chase**
- Wild Goose Chase is a quilt block design (sewn on a background fabric) in which a series of five triangles radiate from a square in the center of the block and end at the corners of the block.

**Wimple**
- Wimple is a nun's head covering that wraps around the neck and chin.

**Windbreaker**
- Windbreaker is a lightweight wind resist jacket.

**Window Treatment**
- Window Treatment is a term describing draperies, curtain, window toppers, shades, blinds, swags, jabots, and many other decorative applications to enhance windows.

**Windsor Tie**
- Windsor Tie is a wide man's necktie with a loose knot.

**Wine**
- Wine is the color of dark red.

**Wing Collar**
- A Wing Collar is a collar with projections which cover shoulder seams.

**Wing Needle**
- Wing needles are specialty needles that are made with wide flared sides like wings and used to create holes in the fabric for heirloom,
entredeux, and decorative purposes. They are available in single and double needle configurations.

**Wing Tip**
- Wing Tip is a man's leather shoe with curved sides resembling wings.

**WIP**
- WIP is abbreviation for Work In Progress.

**Wire Cloth**
- Wire Cloth is woven wire fabric used as a strainer.

**Wire-Edging**
- Wire-edging is ribbon with wire inserted in the edge.

**With Nap Fabric**
- Fabric that has a slight furry side is said to have nap while fabrics that have only smooth surfaces are said to be without Nap Fabric

**WOF**
- WOF is abbreviation for Width of Fabric.

**WOW**
- WOW is abbreviation for Width Of Fabric.

**Wolly Nylon Thread**
- Wooly nylon thread is a stretchy synthetic thread used to create soft comfortable seams and for decorative sewing applications.

**Wonder-Under**
- Wonder-under® is produced by Pellon for the purpose of transferring fabric designs. Wonder-under is fusible and is used to transfer fabric designs to other fabrics, paper, wood, or other materials by the use of heat from a steam iron.

**Wooden Clapper**
- Clapper is a wooden board like tool used for pressing.

**Wool**
- Wool is fabric made from the hair of sheep.
**Wool Melton**
- Wool Melton is unprocessed wool.

**Wool Top**
- Wool Top is also known as worsted top refers to tops made of wool.

**Woolen**
- Woolen is fabric made of wool and the garments made of the wool fabric.

**Woolly**
- Woolly is a garment made of wool used as underwear.

**Worsted -weight Yarns**
- Worsted-weight Yarns are sweater weight woolens (about 1000 yards per pound).

**Worsted Wool**
- Worsted describes fabric made from only long staple fibers woven very tightly and combed for hard smooth finish. Example: Gaberdine. It is common to use this process with wool and wool blends to make men's suits.

**Woven Cashmere**
- Woven Cashmere is a very soft natural fiber fabric.

**Woven Label**
- Woven Label is a label used to identify brand name, and pertinent garment information.

**Wrap**
- Wrap is a coat, shawl, overcoat, or other similar outer garment.

**Wrap Top**
- Wrap Top is a bodice made with cross wrappings of fabric in front or back - also known as Surplice Top.

**Wraparound**
- Wraparound is a dress that is wrapped around the front of the
garment.

**Wrapper**
- Wrapper is clothing wrapped around the body.

**Wreath**
- Wreath is a decorative item (garland or chaplet) made with intertwined into circular shape. Wreath is a headpiece made of flowers.

**Wrinkle Recovery**
- This term is similar to resiliency of the fabric and relates to the capacity of a fabric to reconstitute itself after twisting, wrinkling, or distortion.

**Wrinkles**
- Wrinkles are small irregular unattractive folds or creases over a fabric.

**Wristband**
- Wristband is a band worn around the wrist.

**Wristlet**
- Wristlet is a snug fitting top of a glove or sleeve to hold it in place.

**Wrong Side**
- Fabric often has one side that is finished with design features intended to be seen when the project is completed. The other side is called the wrong side. Be sure to cut out the fabric using the prescribed side of the fabric. Some fabrics have no discernable right or wrong sides. When using fabrics with no right or wrong side, make markings on the fabric seam allowance when cutting out the pattern.

**Wyliecoat**
- Wyliecoat is a warm undergarment petticoat.
Yardage
- Yardage is the amount of fabric which is measured by yards.

Yardstick
- The yardstick is a 36 inch ruler with measurements marked clearly on both sides. It is valuable for marking hemlines, draw lines, and trace patterns.

  - Yarmulkes
  - Yarmulkes is a Jewish skullcap.

Yarn
- Yarn is a set of continuous strand of fibers twisted together for use in knitting or weaving.

Yarn Darners
- Among the heaviest needles with very large eyes are Yarn Darners of Yarn Darning Needles used for hand stitching and darning with yarn.

Yarn Dyed
- Yarn Died is the treating of yarns with chemicals or fabrics to infuse color into the fabric.
**Yashmark**
- Yashmak is a Muslim woman's veil.

**Yellow**
- Yellow is the color of lemons created by mixing green and orange.

**Yoke**
- Yoke is a part of a garment running horizontally across the garment including such panels as garment pieces covering shoulder, waist, midriff, or shirt back.

**Yo Yo**
- Yo Yo are fabric circles which may be used for applique.

**Yukata**
- Yukata is Japanese clothing similar to a kimono.
Z

Zardosi
- Zardosi is Indian hand embroidery.

Zein
- Zein is a corn protein used in making fibers.

Zephyr
- Zephyr is a term describing lightweight fabrics.

Zibeline
- Zibeline is Siberian animal with a soft fur similar to sable. Fabric by the name of Zibeline is produced from a mix of wool yarns.

Zigzag Stitch
- The two most common utility stitches are the straight stitch and the zigzag stitch. The straight stitch is formed by a single row of stitches along a line using center needle position, left needle position, or other fixed needle position on the sewing machine. Zigzag stitches are formed by the needle stitching first on the far left and then on the right and repeating. Zigzag stitches may have different stitch lengths for differing purposes. A very fine or short stitch length produces a satin stitch. Zigzag stitches are used to finish seams, do seaming in knit fabrics, join fabrics in the fagoting technique, overcast for attaching cording and other trims, and for decorative purposes.

Zigzag Foot
- A zigzag foot is a sewing machine presser foot used to sew a zigzag stitch. Its essential characteristic is an oval shaped hole for the needle to pass.
Zipper

- A Zipper is a special fastener that is composed of interlocking teen and a mechanism that locks and unlocks them as it is pulled the length of the zipper. There are many types of zipper applications including lapped zippers, invisible zippers, etc.

Zipper Coil

- To secure the lock on the zipper teeth, a narrow piece of metal (coil) is fastened on the zipper. This is called the zipper coil.

Zipper Foot

- A Zipper Foot is a sewing machine presser foot designed for use in installing a zipper. Below are examples of standard and adjustable zipper feet.

Zipper Teeth

- Whether the zipper is made of plastic or metal, it works by locking prongs of one side of the zipper into the prongs on the other side.
These prongs are described as zipper teeth.

**Zoot Suit**
- Zoot Suit is a suit with a hip length jacket.

**Zori**
- Zori is a sandal shoe.

**Zuccetto**
- Zucchetto is a Roman Catholic skullcap.

**Zweigart**
- Zweigart is a high quality canvas used in kits such as those manufactured by Sew Exciting®.

**CONCLUSION**

This concludes *My Sewing Dictionary*. Donna and I hope you will use this resource again and again in your sewing and quilting. Remember, the meanings to those sewing terms are now only a quick click of a mouse away.

If you encounter sewing terms that are not in My Sewing Dictionary, please send us an email at contact@sewinganswers.com. We will research and add the term to our next updated version.

Also, we encourage you check out our growing library of sewing and quilting resources at [www.sewinganswers.com](http://www.sewinganswers.com)
Ebooks & Digital Products

Please check out all the additional resources, products, reviews, and digital products available through

www.sewinganswers.com

Also find hundreds of hard bound sewing and quilting books, sewing machines, sewing furniture, cabinets, scissors, cutters, mats, rulers, stencils, and more at
www.sewinganswers.com